User & Installation Manual

LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications System



Document Number: 95-104746 Rev. 1.00

Release date: November, 2024

Copyright © Lars Thrane A/S

Denmark

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED





This Document is of © copyright to Lars Thrane A/S. It contains proprietary information, which is disclosed for information purposes only. The contents of this document shall not in whole or in part be used for any other purpose without prior permission from Lars Thrane A/S.

Disclaimer

Any responsibility or liability for loss or damage in connection with the use of this product and the accompanying documentation is disclaimed by Lars Thrane A/S. The information in this manual is provided for information purposes only, is subject to change without notice, and may contain errors or inaccuracies. Manuals issued by Lars Thrane A/S are periodically revised and updated. Anyone relying on this information should acquire the most current version e.g. from Lars Thrane A/S. Lars Thrane A/S is not responsible for the content or accuracy of any translations or reproductions, in whole or in part, of this manual from any other source.

Copyright

© 2024 Lars Thrane A/S. All rights reserved.

Disposal

Old electrical and electronic equipment marked with this symbol can contain substances hazardous to human beings and the environment. Never dispose these items together with unsorted municipal waste (household waste). In order to protect the environment and ensure the correct recycling of old equipment as well as the re-utilization of individual components, use either public collection or private collection by the local distributor of old electrical and electronic equipment marked with this symbol. Contact the local distributor or dealer for information about what type of return system to use.



IMO and SOLAS

The equipment described in this manual is intended for use on commercial marine and leisure vessels. The equipment is covered by the International Maritime Organization (IMO) and Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS) regulations.

Safety Instructions for the Installer

The following safety instructions must be observed during all phases of operation, installation, service and repair of this equipment. Failure to comply with these precautions or with specific warnings elsewhere in this manual violates safety standards of design, manufacture and intended use of the equipment.

Lars Thrane A/S assumes no liability for the customer's failure to comply with these requirements.

Instructions for the Installer		
WARNING - Product installation	WARNING - Explosive atmosphere	
To ensure correct performance of this equipment, it is strongly recommended that professionals with expertise, properly trained, and likewise authorized within the industry is completing the installation.	Do not operate the equipment in the presence of flammable gases or fumes. Operation of any electrical equipment in such an environment constitutes a definite hazard.	
WARNING – Turn off power switch	WARNING - Compass safe distance	
Turn off the main power switch before installing the equipment described in this manual. Do not connect or disconnect equipment when the main power switch is on.	The compass safe distance for standard and steering compasses is 1.40 m (4.6 ft) and 0.9 m (3.0 ft) respectively. Observe these distances to prevent interference to a magnetic compass.	
WARNING – Input Power	WARNING Dual GMDSS Systems	
The input voltage is: 24 VDC.	If installing dual LT-4200S GMDSS systems a minimum distance of 2 0m (6 6 ft) must be kent	
WARNING – Power supply protection	between LT-4230 Antennas	
protected by a fuse or an automatic circuit breaker	WARNING Radio frequency hazards	
LT-4210S Control Unit (15.0 A)	Microwaya radiation minimum safety distances:	
LT-3140S Interface Unit (5.0 A)	100 W/m^2 : 10 cm	
LT-3140S Interface Unit (5.0 A)	100 W/m ² : 10 cm 25 W/m ² : 20 cm	
LT-3140S Interface Unit (5.0 A) WARNING – DC circuit breaker DC circuit breaker must be used as ON/OFF switch for the Control Unit and Interface Unit.	100 W/m ² : 10 cm 25 W/m ² : 20 cm 10 W/m ² : 40 cm	
LT-3140S Interface Unit (5.0 A) WARNING – DC circuit breaker DC circuit breaker must be used as ON/OFF switch for the Control Unit and Interface Unit. WARNING – Overcurrent protective	100 W/m ² : 10 cm 25 W/m ² : 20 cm 10 W/m ² : 40 cm WARNING – Same Power supply	
LT-3140S Interface Unit (5.0 A) WARNING – DC circuit breaker DC circuit breaker must be used as ON/OFF switch for the Control Unit and Interface Unit. WARNING – Overcurrent protective Overcurrent protective devices used as safeguard (specific to IEC 62368-1) - Lars Thrane A/S has the responsibility of use of non-IEC approved fuses in the equipment.	100 W/m²: 10 cm 25 W/m²: 20 cm 10 W/m²: 40 cm Image: Image	
LT-3140S Interface Unit (5.0 A) WARNING – DC circuit breaker DC circuit breaker must be used as ON/OFF switch for the Control Unit and Interface Unit. WARNING – Overcurrent protective Overcurrent protective devices used as safeguard (specific to IEC 62368-1) - Lars Thrane A/S has the responsibility of use of non-IEC approved fuses in the equipment. WARNING – Dual System Power supply	100 W/m²: 10 cm 25 W/m²: 20 cm 10 W/m²: 40 cm Image: Image	

If the safety precautions and warnings on this site are not followed, warranty will be void.

3100S GMDSS System.

Safety Instructions for the Operator

The following safety instructions must be observed during all phases of operation, installation, service and repair of this equipment. Failure to comply with these precautions or with specific warnings elsewhere in this manual violates safety standards of design, manufacture and intended use of the equipment.

Lars Thrane A/S assumes no liability for the customer's failure to comply with these requirements.

Instructions for the Operator

I WARNING – Do not disassemble

Do not disassemble or modify this equipment. Fire, electrical shock, or serious injury can result.

NARNING – Keep away from live circuits

Operational personnel must not remove product enclosure. Do not service the equipment with the communication cable connected. Always disconnect and discharge unit, cable and circuits before touching them.

WARNING - Permanent watch

In case of smoke or water leaks into the equipment, immediately turn off the power. Continued use of the equipment can cause fire or electrical shock. Keep access and permanent watch of the equipment in order to prevent any unwanted escalation.

WARNING – DC mains connector

The DC mains connector is to be used as the disconnection device to isolate the equipment from the mains supply.

IMPORTANT - Safety distance

The safety distance from the LT-4230 Antenna Unit, when the LT-4230 Antenna Unit is powered and transmitting, is 0.4 m (1.3 ft), in order to comply with the regional regulations.

Always keep this safety distance to the LT-4230 Antenna Unit to avoid any serious injury.

If the safety precautions and warnings on this site are not followed, warranty will be void.

IMPORTANT – FCC Compliance Note:

/ľ

/!`

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.

- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This product does not contain any user-serviceable parts.

Repairs should only be made by an authorized Lars Thrane A/S service center. Unauthorized repairs or modifications could result in permanent damage to the equipment and void your warranty and your authority to operate this device under Part 15 regulations.

IMPORTANT – FCC Compliance Note:

This device complies with the GMDSS provisions of part 80 of the FCC rules.

IMPORTANT – Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada Compliance Note:

This device complies with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Required information for the reader

Throughout this document, essential information will be presented to the reader. The following text (emphasized) has the following meaning and/or implication:

- **WARNING**: A 'Warning' is an Operation or Service procedure that, if not avoided, may cause a hazard situation, which could result in personnel death or serious injury.
- **IMPORTANT**: Text marked 'Important' provides essential information to the reader and is key information to the user for the equipment to work properly. Damage to the equipment can occur if instructions are not followed.
- **NOTE**: A 'Note' provides essential information to the reader.

About this manual

Intended readers

This is a User & Installation Manual for LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications System, or LT-4200S GMDSS system. The manual is intended for installers and service personnel, as well as operations of the system (~users).

Personnel installing or servicing the system should be professionals with technical expertise, properly trained, and likewise authorized.

All safety instructions and guidelines in this manual must be observed. The safety instructions are listed in the beginning of the manual. The guidelines are to be found in the separate chapters, where it is needed.

Software versions

This manual is applicable to the following software:

Software Versions			
Description	P/N	Version	
LT-4200S GMDSS System	71-103119	1.00R	
Table 1: Software Versions			

Table 1: Software Versions

- **IMPORTANT**: The latest software released by Lars Thrane A/S must always be used for new installations of the LT-4200S GMDSS Systems and must be updated during a Radio Survey to ensure the best possible performance of the system and services.
- **NOTE**: The latest LT-4200S GMDSS Software and Release Notes can always be downloaded from the Lars Thrane A/S website. Please contact Lars Thrane A/S for details about future software releases and features.

Record of Revisions

Rev.	Description	Release Date	Initials
1.00	Initial Release	November 28, 2024	KTL

Table of Contents

Introduction	1
Application and Limitations	2
Unpacking (in-the-box)	3
Inspection	3
Accessories	4
GMDSS parts	4
SSAS parts	4
Mounts	4
Cable and connectors	5
System Overview	6
Installation and Mounting	7
LT-4210S Control Unit	7
LT-3120 Handset	. 10
LT-3121 Cradle	. 11
LT-4230 Antenna Unit	. 12
LT-3140S Interface Unit	. 21
LT-3150S Alarm Panel	. 22
LT-3160S Printer Adapter	. 24
SSAS Alert & Test Buttons	. 25
Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, Ø53.0mm, A4 Stainless), Antenna Unit	. 27
Interfaces	. 30
LT-4210S Control Unit	. 30
LT-4230 Antenna Unit	. 38
LT-3140S Interface Unit	. 40
Power Consumption	. 47
Maximum	. 47
DC Isolation Resistance and Chassis Ground	. 48
Galvanic Isolated Power Supply	. 50
AC/DC Galvanic Isolated Power Supply	. 50
DC/DC Galvanic Isolated Power Supply	. 50
Battery Power Supply with AC/DC Galvanic Isolated Charger	. 51
User Interface (UI)	. 52
Display	. 53

Activating the System	60
Acquire a Certus GMDSS SIM card	61
Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF)	61
Who's My Service Provider	62
Installation Wizard	63
Radio Survey	74
Change of Hardware and Software	75
Change of Hardware	76
Software update	77
Service Wizard	
GMDSS Services	79
Distress Alert & Distress Call	80
Distress Alert Relay	86
Maritime Safety Information (MSI)	
Safety Calling	
Two-digit Codes	
Safety Messaging	100
GMDSS Submenu	104
Safety Contacts	105
MSI Schedule	106
MSI Settings	109
Distress Settings	115
Position Settings	119
Printer Settings	123
Location Information	124
SES Information	127
Terminal Test	129
Non-GMDSS System Services	135
General Calling	135
External SIP Phones	142
Analogue Phone Adapter	144
Commercial Tracking	145
Supplementary services	146
Data	147

System Submenus	154
Phone	154
Settings	157
System	
Bridge Alert Management (BAM)	173
Serial Interface (RS-422)	177
GNSS sentences	177
BAM sentences	178
MSI sentences	179
NMEA 0183 over UDP	180
GMDSS Printers	
Ship Security Alert System (SSAS)	182
System Setup	182
Recipients	183
Activation of Alert and Test	
Interpretation of the SSAS Test button light	186
Layout of messages	186
Service and cost	188
Long Range Identification and Tracking (LRIT)	189
Web server	190
Accessing the built-in web server	191
Dashboard	192
Messages	193
Configuration	195
Maintenance	228
Legal notice	231
Log out	231
Disable login timeout	231
Service & Repair	232
Appendixes	233
App. A - Applicable Standards	233
App. B - Bridge Alert Management (BAM)	234
App. C - Multiple talkers and multiple listeners	248
App. D - GNSS sentences	249

App. E - BAM sentences	251
APP. F - MSI sentences	253
App. G - GNSS Receiver Integrity States (Automatic GNSS)	255
App. H - Specifications	260
App. I - Outline Drawing: LT-4210S Control Unit	262
App. J - Outline Drawing: Bracket Mount, Control Unit	263
App. K - Outline Drawing: Flush Mount, Control Unit	264
App. L - Outline Drawing: LT-4230 Antenna Unit	265
App. M - Outline Drawing: LT-3140S Interface Unit	266
App. N - Outline Drawing: LT-3150S Alarm Panel	267
App. O - Outline Drawing: LT-3160S Printer Adapter	268
App. P Outline Drawing: Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, 53.0mm, A4 Stainless), Antenna Unit	269
App. Q - Outline Drawing: LT-3120 Handset	270
App. R - Outline Drawing: LT-3121 Cradle	271
App. S - Conformity	272

Introduction

Congratulations on your purchase of the LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications system!

The LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications system is a maritime satellite communication product from Lars Thrane A/S. The LT-4200S GMDSS system is designed for the professional market (deep sea, fishing, and workboats), but can be used for the leisure market as well. The LT-4200S GMDSS system meets all standards and certification requirements needed for worldwide maritime satellite communication equipment.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system has voice and data capabilities with 100% global coverage provided by the Iridium[®] Communications Network.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system offers the following Iridium® GMDSS Safety Services:

- Distress Alert & Distress Call
- Distress Alert Relay
- Maritime Safety Information (MSI)
- Safety Calling
- Safety Messaging

Non-GMDSS Services:

- General Calling (Voice Call)
- IP Data
- Commercial Tracking
- Ship Security Alert System (SSAS)
- Long Range Identification and Tracking (LRIT)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system - basic consists of a control unit, antenna unit, handset and cradle. The additional GMDSS system units available are:

- LT-3140S Interface Unit
- LT-3150S Alarm Panel
- LT-3160S Printer Adapter
- SSAS Kit (1x LT-3140S Interface Unit, 2x SSAS Alert buttons, 1x SSAS Test button)

A single coaxial cable connects the control unit with the antenna unit. Using a standard coaxial cable, up to 150 meters of separation between the units can be obtained, giving freedom to mount the antenna unit in the best possible location, with free line of sight to the Iridium satellites.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system can be used as the primary satellite communication product on vessels, covering the basic communication needs in terms of connectivity between the ship and shore and ship to ship.

Application and Limitations

- The LT-4200S GMDSS system shall be installed according to manufacturer's User & Installation Manual.
- The LT-4200S GMDSS system includes an integrated Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) receiver for position fixing.
- The LT-4200S GMDSS complies with the requirements for Other Network Function (ONF) as defined in IEC 61162-450
- The LT-4200S GMDSS can be used for GMDSS services in Sea Areas A1, or A2 or A3 defined by SOLAS 1974 as amended, where Flag states have recognized Iridium as a mobile satellite service for use in the GMDSS.
- The LT-4200S GMDSS complies with the requirements for reception of MSI through the Iridium SafetyCast service and can be used for compliance with the carriage requirements for EGC when such services are made available through the Iridium satellite system.
- The LT-4200S GMDSS System LRIT Service can be used in all Sea Areas A1 A4
- The LT-4230 Antenna Unit operational low temperature is:
- -40°C (-40°F) when using 24 VDC input power on the LT-4210S Control Unit

Unpacking (in-the-box)

Unpack the LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications System – Basic (Order No.: 90-104506) and check that the following items are present in the box:

- 51-103118 LT-4210S Control Unit
- 51-100988 LT-3120 Handset
- 51-101181 LT-3121 Cradle
- 51-102640 LT-4230 Antenna Unit
- 91-100771 Bracket Mount, Control Unit
- 91-102118 Power Cable, 3m
- 4 x Stainless steel A4 screws (for Bracket Mount, Control Unit)
- 2 x Stainless steel A4 screws (for Cradle)
- 4 x Unit Test Sheets
- 95-104746 LT-4200S GMDSS User & Installation Manual
- **NOTE**: Antenna unit mounts are not included in the LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications System - Basic (P/N: 90-104506) and must be ordered separately. The antenna unit must only be mounted, using a pole mount, delivered by Lars Thrane A/S. The antenna unit mounts are listed with part numbers (P/N) in Accessories *on page 4*.

Inspection

Inspect the shipping cartons and/or wooden box immediately upon receipt for evidence of damage during transport. If the shipping material is severely damaged or water stained, request that the carrier's agent is present when opening the cartons and/or wooden box. Save all box packing material for future use.

After unpacking the system and opening the cartons, inspect it thoroughly for hidden damage and loose components or fittings. If the contents are incomplete, if there is mechanical damage or defect, or if the system does not work properly, notify your distributor.

WARNING: To avoid electric shock, do not apply power to the LT-4200S GMDSS system components if there is any sign of shipping damage to any part of a unit or the outer cover. Read the Safety Instructions at the front of this manual before installing or operating the system.

Accessories

GMDSS parts

The following GMDSS parts are not part of the basic system and must be ordered separately:

- 51-101814 LT-3140S Interface Unit
- 51-101815 LT-3150S Alarm Panel (incl. 25m cable)
- 51-101816 LT-3160S Printer Adapter (incl. 25m cable)

SSAS parts

The following SSAS parts are not part of the basic system and must be ordered separately:

- 91-102073 SSAS Alert Button (incl. 50m cable)
- 91-102074 SSAS Test Button (incl. 50m cable)

A SSAS kit is offered consisting of the following parts (Order No.: 90-102072):

- 51-101814 LT-3140S Interface Unit, 1 pcs.
- 91-102073 SSAS Alert Button (incl. 50m cable), 2 pcs.
- 91-102074 SSAS Test Button (incl. 50m cable), 1 pcs.

Mounts

The following accessory parts are not part of the basic system and must be ordered separately:

- 91-100772 Flush Mount, Control Unit
- 91-102967 Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, Ø53.0mm, A4 Stainless), Antenna Unit

Cable and connectors

The following cable and connector parts are not part of the basic system and must be ordered separately:

- 91-100768 Aux Cable, 3m
- 91-101137 Coaxial Cable Ø10.3mm 10m
- 91-101138 Coaxial Cable Ø10.3mm 25m
- 91-101139 Coaxial Cable Ø10.3mm 50m
- 91-101186 N Conn. (male) for Coaxial Cable Ø10.3mm
- 91-101188 Crimping Tool for Coaxial Cable Ø10.3mm

Coaxial cables are delivered with one fixed N connector (outdoor mounting), another loose N connector and crimp parts comes included with the cable. It is required to use an appropriate crimping tool for attaching the loose N connector.

NOTE: For further details on the cable and connectors, please contact Lars Thrane A/S. A coaxial cable up to a length of 150 meters can be used for connecting the LT-4210S Control Unit and the LT-4230 Antenna Unit. Details about the coaxial cable, specification and cable lengths, are described in *LT-4230 Antenna Unit* on page 38.

System Overview

The LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications System is a standalone communication product, which is using the Iridium[®] satellite constellation. The LT-4200S GMDSS system is working on the new Iridium[®] NEXT satellites. An overview of the LT-4200S GMDSS system is illustrated in Figure 1.



Figure 1: LT-4200S GMDSS system (units and interfaces)

The LT-4200S GMDSS basic system consists of the following units, provided by Lars Thrane A/S:

- LT-4210S Control Unit
- LT-3120 Handset
- LT-3121 Cradle
- LT-4230 Antenna Unit

The following optional units can be bought as add-ons, provided by Lars Thrane A/S:

- LT-3140S Interface Unit
- LT-3150S Alarm Panel
- LT-3160S Printer Adapter
- SSAS Alert & Test buttons

Installation and Mounting

LT-4210S Control Unit

The LT-4210S Control Unit is the master unit in the system, supporting external interfaces and the operational user interface. The LT-4210S Control Unit is designed for indoor mounting. See the specifications in *App. H - Specifications* on page 260.



Figure 2: LT-4210S Control Unit (front view)

The LT-4210S Control Unit has the following interfaces:

- 4-pin power connector (male), marked 'PWR'
- Chassis ground connector, marked 'GNDC'
- N connector (female) for coaxial cable to the LT-4230 Antenna Unit, marked 'ANT'
- Ethernet (RJ-45) connector, marked 'LAN'
- 10-pin auxiliary connector (male), marked 'AUX'
- SIM card holder, marked 'SIM'
- 5-pin connector (female) for LT-3120 Handset (front of the control unit)

The interfaces on the back side of the LT-4210S Control Unit are illustrated in Figure 3 on page 8.

The LT-4210S Control Unit interfaces are described in *Interfaces* on page 30. The LT-4210S Control Unit, front and back view, are illustrated in Figure 2 and Figure 3.



Figure 3: LT-4210S Control Unit (back view)

The LT-4210S Control Unit user interface, display and buttons, are described in *User Interface (UI)* on page 52.

NOTE: The LT-4210S Control Unit must be mounted with either the Bracket Mount, Control Unit (P/N: 91-100771) or Flush Mount, Control Unit (P/N: 91-100772) - illustrated in Figure 4 and Figure 5. The Flush Mount, Control Unit is not included in the LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications System – Basic (P/N: 90-102071) and must be ordered separately.

Mounting and installation considerations:

For optimum system performance, the following guidelines on where to install and mount the LT-4210S Control Unit must be followed. It is recommended to mount the unit in a location, which fulfills these requirements:

- Mount the unit indoor (not exposed to direct water)
- Mount the unit using either the bracket mount or flush mount
- Mount the unit on a rigid structure with a minimum of exposure to vibration and shock
- Mount the unit in an area with an ambient temperature between -15°C to +55°C (+5°F to +131°F)

The Bracket Mount and Flush Mount for the LT-4210S Control Unit are illustrated in Figure 4 and Figure 5.



Figure 4: Bracket Mount, Control Unit.





LT-3120 Handset

The LT-3120 Handset is the primary voice interface for the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The LT-3120 Handset must be connected to the front of the LT-4210S Control Unit. The connector is illustrated in Figure 2 on page 7.



Figure 6: LT-3121 Handset (front view)

The LT-3120 Handset is connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit via a 5-pin proprietary angle connector. The spiral cord, fixed to the LT-3120 Handset is ~ 0.4 m from handset to connector, when coiled. The spiral cord can be stretched to a maximum of 2 m. The LT-3120 Handset is designed for indoor mounting. Check the specifications in *App. H - Specifications* on page 260.

The LT-3120 Handset has the following characteristics:

- High-performance audio speaker and microphone
- Separate ringer (buzzer)
- Speaker volume control (double-button, marked with '+' and '-', for volume up and down)
- Built-in off-hook detection circuit



Figure 7: LT-3121 Handset (Back view)

- **NOTE**: The LT-4210S Control Unit will inform the user if the LT-3120 handset is not properly connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit. A BAM alert will be activated (Lost handset).
- **NOTE**: The LT-3120 Handset must be operated together with the LT-3121 Cradle, for the off-hook detection circuit to work. The LT-3121 Cradle is described in *LT-3121 Cradle* on page 11.

LT-3121 Cradle

The LT-3121 Cradle is used together with the LT-3120 Handset. The LT-3121 Cradle should be mounted next to the LT-4210S Control Unit, supporting the LT-3120 Handset. The LT-3121 Cradle specifications are available in *App. H* - *Specifications* on page 260.



Figure 9: LT-3121 Cradle (front view)



Figure 8: LT-3121 Cradle (back view)

IMPORTANT: The LT-3121 Cradle contains a magnet, to hold on to the LT-3120 Handset. Make sure that other electronic equipment is installed in a distance respecting the compass safe distance of 1.4 m (4.6 ft).

An outline drawing for the LT-3121 Cradle is available in *App. R - Outline Drawing: LT-3121 Cradle* on page 271.

LT-4230 Antenna Unit

The LT-4230 Antenna Unit is designed for outdoor mounting and connected to the LT-4210 Control Unit via a coaxial cable. The LT-4230 Antenna Unit specifications are available in *App. H - Specifications* on page *260*. The LT-4230 Antenna Unit has an N connector (female) mounted, at the bottom of the antenna.



The LT-4230 Antenna Unit has an N connector (female) at the bottom side of the unit.

Mounting and installation considerations:

- Mount the unit vertically (with the N connector pointing down)
- Feed the coaxial cable through the included cable hose
- Mount the unit with free line of sight to the Iridium[®] and GNSS satellites. Make sure that the unit can receive signals from the Iridium[®] and GNSS satellites (satellite reception information is available in the LT-4210S Control Unit user interface display, see Figure 60 on page 53)
- Mount the unit on a rigid structure with a minimum of exposure to vibration and shock
- Mount the unit using the Pole Mount provided by Lars Thrane A/S
- Mount the unit outdoor with an ambient temperature between -40°C to +55°C (-40°F to +131°F)
- Mount the unit with a minimum angle of 10 degrees towards a radar antenna (above or below) and keep a minimum distance of 2.5 m (8 ft)
- Mount the unit at least 1 m. (3 ft.) away from radio transmitting antennas (VHF, UHF, MF-HF)
- Mount the unit at least 2 m. (6 ft.) away from Inmarsat and transmitting VSAT antennas

In order to avoid breaking the LT-4230 Antenna Unit N-connector (female), it is important not to use tooling when connecting and fastening the coaxial cable N-connector (male) to the antenna unit. The coaxial cable N-connector thread nut must be fastened by hand only.



Figure 11: Connecting coaxial cable N-connector to the LT-4230 Antenna Unit

IMPORTANT: Maximum allowed torque is 2 Nm when connecting the coaxial cable N-connector (male) to the N-connector (female) of the LT-4230 Antenna Unit. No tooling must be used for fastening the coaxial cable thread nut as illustrated in Figure 11 above.

The LT-4230 Antenna Unit has a hazard warning label attached to the radome as illustrated in Figure 12.



Figure 12: LT-4230 Antenna Unit (incl. warning label)

- **WARNING**: The safety distance from the LT-4230 Antenna Unit, is 0.4 m (1.3 ft), in order to comply with the regional regulations.
- **IMPORTANT**: Due to the adjacency of the Iridium and Inmarsat frequency bands, the LT-4230 Antenna Unit may not co-operate in the proximity of an active Inmarsat antenna unit, see *Coexisting with Inmarsat L-band* on page 19.
- **WARNING:** The radio frequency minimum safe distances are as follows: 100 W/m^2 : 10 cm, 25 W/m²: 20 cm, 10 W/m²: 40 cm.

The LT-4230 Antenna Unit must be installed outside the radar main beam. Typically, this is in the order of 10 degrees. To avoid near field antenna coupling, a minimum distance of 2.5 m (8 ft) between the radar antenna and the LT-4230 Antenna Unit must be obeyed. Figure 13 is illustrating how the LT-4230 Antenna Unit should be mounted to avoid interference from radars.



Figure 13: LT-4230 Antenna Unit – Avoid Radar Beam

IMPORTANT: Failing to obey the specified installation conditions will void the warranty. However, depending on the specific radar frequency and power level, the separation distance between the radar and the LT-4230 Antenna Unit may be reduced, with no impact on the antenna performance. The performance of the LT-4230 Antenna Unit should be validated when the LT-4200S system is installed.

The LT-4230 Antenna Unit must be mounted a minimum of 1 m from MF-HF, VHF, and UHF antennas.



Figure 14: LT-4230 Antenna Unit - Separation to MF-HF, VHF, and UHF antennas.

NOTE: The LT-4230 Antenna Unit must be installed with a 360° clear view of the sky. However, minor obstructions such as a mast will not degrade the antenna performance severely, if a separation distance larger than 15 times the diameter of the obstruction is kept.



Figure 15: LT-4230 Antenna Unit – (separation distance to minor obstructions)

The LT-4230 Antenna Unit must be mounted using the Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, Ø53.0mm, A4 Stainless) listed in *Mounts* on page 4.

The LT-4230 Antenna Unit should be mounted with free line of sight to the Iridium satellites for best possible performance. The best location will typically be at the top of the lantern mast, where there are no obstructions blocking the Iridium satellite link. The LT-4230 Antenna Unit is designed to maintain a communication link to the Iridium satellites in all weather conditions, see Table 2.

Extreme Ship Motion Values & Clear View Angles Below the Horizontal Plan			
Motion	Maximum	Iridium Satellite	Clear View Angle Below the
Direction	Amplitude	Acquisition	Horizontal Plan
Roll	±30°	+8°	-22°
Pitch	±10°	+8°	-2°

Table 2: LT-4230 AU Roll and Pitch Clear View Angles (below the horizontal plan)



Figure 16: LT-4230 AU Installation (roll: clear view angle below the horizontal plan)

NOTE: The LT-4230 Antenna Unit should be mounted with a -22° clear view angle below the horizontal plan (port and starboard directions), where no obstructions block the Iridium satellite signal, to maintain full functionality under extreme roll conditions. Also, the upper hemisphere should be without any blockages to the Iridium satellites.



Figure 17: LT-4230 AU Installation (pitch: clear view angle below the horizontal plan)

- **NOTE**: The LT-4230 Antenna Unit must be mounted with a -2° clear view angle below the horizontal plan (fore and after directions), where no obstructions must block the Iridium satellite signal, to maintain full functionality under extreme pitch conditions. Also, the upper hemisphere must be without any blockages to the Iridium satellites.
- IMPORTANT: For best possible performance of the LT-4200S system, the LT-4230 Antenna Unit must have free line of sight to the Iridium satellites as illustrated in Figure 16 and in Figure 17 (clear view angle below the horizontal plan). To have the best possible performance obstructions should be below the marked lines of these two illustrative figures.

Coexisting with Inmarsat L-band

It is possible to install the LT-4200S system onboard a vessel that has Inmarsat C equipment installed.

It is important to note that the LT-4230 Antenna Unit must be mounted below the Inmarsat C antenna with a minimum distance of 1 m and below an angle of minimum 15° when coexistence is required.

Survival distances:

Mount the LT-4230 Antenna Unit at a minimum distance of 1 m from an Inmarsat C antenna. Mount the LT-4230 Antenna Unit at a minimum distance of 2 m from another LT-4230 Antenna Unit Mount the LT-4230 Antenna Unit at a minimum distance of 2 m from another Iridium Antennas Mount the LT-4230 Antenna Unit at a minimum distance of 2 m from GNSS receivers Mount the LT-4230 Antenna Unit at a minimum distance of 3 m from an Inmarsat Fleet Broadband



Figure 18: LT-4230 Antenna Unit minimum distance to another LT-4230 Antenna Unit.



Figure 19: LT-4230 Antenna Unit minimum distance to an LT-3130 Antenna Unit.



Figure 20: LT-4230 Antenna Unit minimum distance to an LT-3130 Antenna Unit.

Lars Thrane also recommends that the LT-4230 Antenna Unit is installed with a minimum distance of 2 meters to the receivers and transmitters respectively receiving og transmitting with the listed frequencies. These frequencies are listed below in Table 3 and Table 4:

Receivers adjacent to Iridium Transmission band		
GNSS	1563.0 -1587.0 MHz	
Glonass	1593.0 -1610.0 MHz	
GALILEO	1559.0 -1591.0 MHz	
BeiDou	1559.05 -1563.15 MHz	

Table 3: Receivers and frequencies where the LT-4230 should be installedwith atleast 2 meters of separation

Transmitters and receivers adjacent to Iridium Transmission band		
Inmarsat Tx 1626.5 – 1675.0 MHz		
Iridium Tx/Rx	1610.0 – 1626.5 MHz	

 Table 4: Transmitters and Receivers where the LT-4230 should be installed

 with atleast 2 meters of separation

LT-3140S Interface Unit

The LT-3140S Interface Unit is designed for indoor mounting and is connected directly to the LT-4210S Control Unit via an Ethernet cable. The LT-3140S Interface Unit specifications are available in *App. H* - *Specifications* on page 260.



Figure 21: LT-3140S Interface Unit (with front cover).

The LT-3140S Interface Unit without front cover is illustrated in Figure 42 on page 40.

The LT-3140S Interface Unit front cover can be removed by pushing on both sides of the front cover, marked with the text 'Open' and press the front cover upwards (hold tight to the backplate, if the unit is not mounted).

Once, the LT-3140S Interface Unit front cover has been removed, the LT-3140S Interface Unit can be flush mounted on a surface. Use all four screw holes (every corner) of the backplate, to fasten the unit sufficiently.

The LT-3140S Interface Unit interfaces are described in *LT-3140S Interface Unit* on page 40.

LT-3150S Alarm Panel

The LT-3150S Alarm Panel is designed for indoor mounting and connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit via a proprietary 4-wire CAN cable. The LT-3150S Alarm Panel specifications are available in *App. H - Specifications* on page 260.



Figure 22: LT-3150S Alarm Panel

The LT-3150S Alarm Panel consists of the following human interface functions: DISTRESS button, DIM button, and speaker. The LT-3150S Alarm Panel is delivered with a 25m cable attached to the unit.

The wire designation of the LT-3150S Alarm Panel is described in Table 5. The LT-3150S Alarm Panel can only be connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit.

LT-3150S AP Interconnect Details		
Wire Color	Wire Designation	
White	VCC	
Yellow	CAN+	
Green	CAN-	
Brown	GND	
Table 5, 17 24505 Alama David (intersection and details)		

Table 5: LT-3150S Alarm Panel (interconnect details)

IMPORTANT: See *Distress Alert & Distress Call* on page 80 for operation of the DISTRESS button and activation of Distress Alert and Distress Call.

The LT-3150S Alarm Panel must be flush mounted. A flush mount is delivered together with the LT-3150S Alarm Panel. The LT-3150S Alarm Panel with the flush mount is illustrated in Figure 23.



Figure 23: LT-3150S Alarm Panel (back view)

The LT-3150S Alarm Panel can be released from the flush mount by using a release tool as illustrated in Figure 24 and Figure 25.



Figure 25: LT-3150S Alarm Panel (release tool)
LT-3160S Printer Adapter

The LT-3160S Printer Adapter is designed for indoor mounting and connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit via a proprietary 4-wire CAN cable. The LT-3160S Printer Adapter specifications are available in *App. H* - *Specifications* on page 260.



Figure 26: LT-3160S Printer Adapter

The LT-3160S Printer Adapter is interfacing to a GMDSS printer, using the Centronics interface, 36 pins (IEEE Std 1284-2000, 1284-B receptacle connector). The LT-3160S Printer Adapter is delivered with a 25m cable attached to the unit.

The wire designation of the LT-3160S Printer Adapter is described in Table 6. The LT-3160S Printer Adapter can only be connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit.

LT-3160S PA Interconnect Details		
Wire Color	Wire Designation	
White	VCC	
Yellow	CAN+	
Green	CAN-	
Brown	GND	

Table 6: LT-3160S Printer Adapter (interconnect details)

The list of GMDSS printers supported and tested are available in *GMDSS Printers* on page 181.

SSAS Alert & Test Buttons

This section will provide requirements for the placement and installation of the SSAS Alert and SSAS Test buttons. The LT-4200S GMDSS System supports up to 3 x SSAS Alert buttons and 1 x SSAS Test button connected via the LT-3140S Interface Unit.



Figure 28: SSAS Alert button



Figure 27: SSAS Test button

This manual describes the following SSAS details:

- Installation of the SSAS Alert and Test buttons (this section)
- Wiring and button layout, see SSAS (SSAS Alarm 1 to 3 & SSAS Test) on page 43
- SSAS functionality, see Ship Security Alert System (SSAS) on page 182
- Web server configuration of SSAS, see SSAS on page 201

Placement of the SSAS Alert & Test buttons

The SSAS Alert and Test buttons must be installed accordingly to the IMO requirements on covert installation and operation: *"The system is intended to allow a covert activation to be made which alerts the competent authority ashore and does not raise an alarm on board ship nor alert other ships"*. The SSAS Alert and SSAS Test buttons must be hidden away. It is a requirement to have at least two covert activation points (SSAS Alert buttons), whereas one of these must be installed on the navigational bridge, the other one can be installed in other locations. The SSAS Test button should be installed close to one of the SSAS Alert buttons to make testing easier. Consider the installation position of the SSAS Test button for easy access for the crew to perform regularly testing of the SSAS functionality. Also, consider the placement of the SSAS Test button as this button will be lit under normal operational conditions and may disturb the night sight on the bridge.

Installing the SSAS Alert & Test Buttons

The SSAS Alert and SSAS Test buttons must be installed following these step-by-step instructions:

1. Drill a 16mm hole where the button is to be installed (maximum thickness 5 mm)



Figure 29: Install SSAS Alert & SSAS Test button (1 of 3)

2. The cable must be routed through the hole. Make sure that the mounting nut and heat-shrink $(Ø19.2 \times 55 \text{ mm})$ is placed on the back of the hole



Figure 30: Install SSAS Alert and Test button (2 of 3)

- 3. The mounting nut must be fastened to secure the push button actuator to the plate
- 4. Bend the cable under the heat-shrink for optimal cable relief before pulling the heat-shrink over the push button actuator towards the plate (covering the push button actuator and optionally the mounting nut)



Figure 31: Install SSAS Alert and Test button (3 of 3)

- 5. Apply heat to the heat-shrink for best possible protection of the SSAS Alert or SSAS Test button
- NOTE:The SSAS Alert button (incl. 50m cable) and the SSAS Test button (incl. 50m cable) must be
purchased from Lars Thrane A/S. Also, a SSAS kit for the LT-4200S GMDSS System is
available, including: 1 x LT-3140S Interface Unit, 2 x SSAS Alert button (incl. 50m cable), and
1 x SSAS Test button (incl. 50m cable), see SSAS parts on page 4.

Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, Ø53.0mm, A4 Stainless), Antenna Unit

The Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, Ø53.0mm), Antenna Unit is illustrated in Figure 32 to Figure 34.



Figure 32: Pole Mount (2.0" pipe), Antenna Unit.

Pole mount installation procedure:

- 1. Screw the pole mount onto the LT-4230 Antenna Unit using the Head screws (max torque = 12 Nm) as illustrated on Figure 33
- 2. The LT-4230 Antenna Unit and pole mount can now be mounted on the 2.0" pipe. Fasten the three pole lock pinot screws, as illustrated in Figure 34 (max torque = 88 Nm)
- 3. Feed the coaxial cable through the supplied cable hose
- 4. Fasten the coaxial cable to the LT-4230 Antenna Unit (N connector)
- 5. Apply self-volcanic tape on the N connector and cable to protect against saltwater and corrosion
- **NOTE**: The Pole Mount (2.0" pipe), Antenna Unit interfaces to a pipe of maximum 2.0" (53.0 mm), measured outer diameter.



4x M5x16 Hex Socket Countersunk Screw A4 Tuflok Torque max. 7 Nm

Figure 33: Pole Mount (2.0" pipe), Antenna Unit.



Figure 34: Pole Mount (2.0" pipe), Antenna Unit.

NOTE: The Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, 53.0mm), Antenna Unit only supports a 2.0" pipe. The pinot screws (antenna and pole lock) torques are specified in Figure 33 and Figure 34. The pole mount is made of A4 stainless steel. The pinot screws are made of A4 stainless steel.

If installing the LT-4230 Antenna Unit without the use of the Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, 53.0mm), Antenna Unit, refer to Figure 35 below for the max screw length of 25 mm.



Figure 35: Max screw length for Non-Pole mount installation

NOTE: Max screw length for Non-Pole mount installation is 25mm.

Interfaces

LT-4210S Control Unit

This section will describe all the external interfaces from the LT-4210S Control Unit.



Figure 36: LT-4210S Control Unit (back view)

DC input (PWR)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is designed to be used on a 24 VDC power buses (nominal). External DC power to the LT-4200S GMDSS system is provided by connecting the proprietary 91-102118 Power Cable, 3m - delivered by Lars Thrane A/S. The power connector is mounted on the back side of the LT-4210S Control Unit and marked 'PWR', see Figure 36.

The power source for the LT-4200S GMDSS System must comply with the GMDSS regulations and the associated standards, minimum is compliance to IEC 60945 (2002). The power source to LT-4210S Control Unit and the LT-3140S Interface Unit must be connected to the main and emergency source of power as required by SOLAS reg II-1/42 or /43, and a battery backup system. When extending the power supply cables the positive (+) and the negative (-) must be installed closely together in order to keep the cable inductance low.

NOTE:Make sure to use a galvanic isolated power supply as illustrated in Galvanic Isolated Power
Supply on page 50.NOTE:If using a LT-3140S Interface Unit in the installation, it is required that the LT-3140S
Interface Unit uses the same power source as the LT-4210S Control Unit. The two units
cannot use different power sources according to standards.NOTE:The input voltage range is: 24 VDC (8 A). The LT-4210S Control Unit DC input connector and
circuit is protected and certified for Reverse Polarity Protection.

NOTE:	The LT-4230 Antenna Unit operational low temperature is: -40°C (-40°F) when using 24 VDC input power on the LT-4210S Control Unit
NOTE:	The DC input power source must be connected to a battery backup system (requirement for all SOLAS vessels). The power source and battery backup system are not provided by Lars Thrane A/S.
NOTE:	It may be noted that for vessels without an emergency source of power it may be possible to install the LT-4200S GMDSS system, if the capacity of the reserve source (battery backup) is at least 6 hours.
NOTE:	A new power connector (4-pole) has been introduced with the LT-4210S Control Unit. This new power connector requires the new 91-102118 power cable, 3m from Lars Thrane A/S. Use only the 91-102118 power cable, 3m delivered by Lars Thrane A/S.
NOTE:	The LT-4210S Control Unit must be connected to the power supply using a 15 A circuit breaker. See <i>Galvanic Isolated Power Supply</i> on page 50.

Chassis ground (GNDC)

The chassis ground connector is placed on the back side of the LT-4210S Control Unit and marked with 'GNDC', see Figure 36 on page 30.

Certus GMDSS SIM card (SIM)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system requires a Certus GMDSS SIM card to be operated with the Iridium[®] satellite services. The Iridium[®] Certus GMDSS SIM card must be bought from one of the official Iridium[®] GMDSS Service Providers. A list of Iridium[®] GMDSS Service Providers can be found at the Iridium[®] website: <u>https://www.iridium.com</u> (select 'Services', and hereafter 'Iridium GMDSS').

The Certus GMDSS SIM card must be inserted in the LT-4210S Control Unit behind the rubber dust cover. Make sure that the LT-4210S Control Unit is powered off before opening the rubber dust cover. When the Certus GMDSS SIM card is properly inserted in the slot, and the rubber dust cover is secured, the LT-4210S Control Unit can be powered up. The rubber dust cover is illustrated in Figure 36 on page 30 and marked with 'SIM'.

The following procedure must be followed when inserting, replacing, or removing the Certus GMDSS SIM card:

- 1. Turn off the power to the LT-4210S Control Unit
- 2. Remove the rubber dust cover on the back side of the LT-4210S Control Unit
- 3. Slide the SIM card holder as illustrated with the arrows on the PCB print, to unlock
- 4. Open the SIM card holder and insert or remove the SIM card
- 5. Close the SIM card holder
- 6. Slide the SIM card holder as illustrated with the arrows on the PCB (opposite direction), to lock
- 7. Re-insert the rubber dust cover
- 8. Turn on power to the LT-4210S Control Unit
- NOTE:The LT-4210S Control Unit must be powered off when inserting, changing, or removing the
Certus GMDSS SIM card. The Certus GMDSS SIM card is hidden behind the rubber dust
cover on the back side of the LT-4210S Control Unit.

Figure 37 is illustrating an Iridium Certus GMDSS SIM card. The format is Mini-SIM (2FF) 25 x 15 mm. The GMDSS SIM card must be removed from the full-sized card carrier by breaking the Mini-SIM out. The full-sized card carrier contains the MSISDN number, while the SIM card itself contains the ICCID.



Figure 37: Iridium Certus GMDSS SIM card

The Certus GMDSS SIM card will be delivered from the Iridium GMDSS Service Providers (SP) together with the essential information:

- MSISDN number (the Iridium Mobile Subscriber ISDN number)
- ICCID
- Vessel Call Sign
- **IMPORTANT:** During activation of the Certus GMDSS SIM Card, the Iridium GMDSS Service Provider will request vessel details (Vessel name, IMO number, MMSI number, etc.). This essential data must be delivered correctly to the Iridium GMDSS Service Provider and will be validated upon completing the Installation Wizard. If any of the data is not correct, then the Iridium GMDSS Service Provider must be contacted and data must be corrected, before finalizing the GMDSS installation and activation.

The GMDSS SIM card will be delivered with the SIM lock feature disabled. Thus, the LT-4200S GMDSS system will be operational as soon as the GMDSS SIM card is inserted, and the Installation Wizard has been completed. The activation of the LT-4200S GMDSS system, hereunder the Installation Wizard, is described in further details in *Activating the System* on page 60.

NOTE: The Certus GMDSS SIM card will be delivered with the SIM lock feature disabled. It is not possible to activate the SIM lock, since it always must be possible to use the system as the primary safety communication system.

Ethernet RJ45 (LAN)

The LT-4210S Control Unit has an Ethernet LAN (RJ-45) interface, supporting service & maintenance or connection to the LT-3140S Interface Unit. The Ethernet interface can be used to access the built-in web server, which is further described in *Web server* on page 190.

The LT-4210S Control Unit will automatically request and obtain an IP address when connected to a Local Area Network (LAN) with a DHCP server (e.g. a router). If connecting the LT-4210S Control Unit directly to a PC, then the two will automatically negotiate an IPv4 Link-Local address. The current IP address can be found in the user interface display (Menu -> System -> Network: IP Address).

NOTE: LT-4200S GMDSS system is permitted to be connected to an IEC 61162 Ethernet network.

Auxiliary (AUX)

The auxiliary connector is a 10-pin connector (male) mounted on the backside of the LT-4210S Control Unit as illustrated in Figure 36 on page 30 and marked with 'AUX'. The auxiliary connector contains the following interfaces:

- RS-422 serial interface
- 2 x External (I/O)

The auxiliary connector pin out and auxiliary cable wire color and designation are illustrated in Figure 39, Figure 38, and in Table 7.



Figure 39: AUX connector (pin out)



Figure 38: AUX cable (pin out)

Auxiliary (AUX) Cable		
Pin No.	Wire Color Wire Designation	
1	Black	External Output
2	Brown	External Output
3	Red	RS-422 Z (output) Tx-
4	Orange	RS-422 Y (output) Tx+
5	Yellow	RS-422 A (input) Rx+
6	Green	RS-422 B (input) Rx-
7	Blue	External Input
8	Violet	External Input
9	Gray	Not Used
10	White	RS422 (C) common

Table 7: AUX cable (wire color designation)

NOTE: Use only the 91-100768 Auxiliary Cable, 3m delivered by Lars Thrane A/S for connecting to the auxiliary connector on the backside of the LT-4210S Control Unit. The Auxiliary Cable, 3m is an accessory part and must be ordered separately.

The LT-4210S Control Unit is supporting external ringer functionality on the Auxiliary (External I/O) interface, which can be configured from the web server, see *External I/O* on page 222.

The LT-4210S Control Unit is supporting GNSS, BAM, and MSI data on the Auxiliary (RS-422) interface, which can be configured from the web server, see *GNSS*, *BAM and MSI* on page 223.

External Output and Input are further described on the next pages.

RS-422 Circuit Diagram (LT-4210S CU - Aux connector)

Figure 40 shows the RSS-422 circuit diagram used for the LT-4210S Control Unit (Aux connector).



Figure 40: RS-422 Circuit Diagram for the LT-4210S CU

Interface Drive Capability as a Talker and Listener:

- A (Rx+), B (Rx-), Y (Tx+), Z (Tx-): -60V to +60V
- Short circuit protected
- Galvanic isolated up to 1500V

External Output (External Ringer)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports connection of an external speaker for incoming call notifications. Connection of the external speaker must be completed as illustrated in Figure 41, incl. a relay. The maximum voltage and current for the relay are documented on the figure. External Output (Pin 2) and External Output (Pin 1) designation and wire colors are listed in Table 7 on page 34.



Figure 41: External I/O (external ringer diagram)

NOTE: The External Ringer functionality must be configured using the web server, Configuration - External I/O, see *External I/O* on page 222.

External Input

The LT-4200S GMDSS system does not support any functionality for the External I/O Input.

RS-422 (GNSS, BAM, and MSI)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system Auxiliary RS-422 (bi-directional) interface can be configured to support different functions. The following functions are supported:

- GNSS (see GNSS sentences on page 177)
- BAM (see *BAM sentences* on page 178)
- MSI (see *MSI sentences* on page 179)

The RS-422 interface can be configured using the web server, see GNSS, BAM and MSI on page 223.

N Connector (ANT)

The LT-4210S Control Unit has a N Connector (male) connector for the interface to the LT-4230 Antenna Unit. The N connector interface is providing data communication and power to the antenna unit over a coaxial cable. The N connector marked with 'ANT' is illustrated in Figure 36 on page 30.

NOTE: Do not connect or disconnect the antenna cable when the LT-4210S Control Unit is powered.

LT-4230 Antenna Unit

The LT-4210S Control Unit and the LT-4230 Antenna Unit must be connected using a coaxial cable. Both the control unit and the antenna unit have a N connector (female) mounted. This section will specify the requirements to the coaxial cable. The RF and DC requirements are specified in Table 8 and Table 9.

RF Coaxial Cable Requirements		
Requirement Specification		
Cable impedance 50 Ω		
Maximum signal loss 45 dB/100 m @ 1.5 GHz		

Table 8: RF Coaxial Cable Requirements

In most cases it will be the DC resistance that will determine the maximum length of the coaxial cable. It is important to note that the input voltage of the control unit is important for the length of the coaxial cable that can be used.

DC Coaxial Cable Requirements	
Power Source Maximum DC Resistance	
24 VDC	5.5 Ω

Table 9: DC Coaxial Cable Requirements

NOTE: The DC coaxial cable resistance that is listed in Table 9 and used to calculate the maximum cable length is the sum of the DC inner conductor resistance and the DC outer conductor resistance. Some data sheets are not providing enough information about the DC resistance, in which cases, the cable manufacture must be approached to obtain this information.

Lars Thrane A/S has calculated the maximum allowed cable lengths with one coaxial cabl0065 as illustrated in Table 10. The coaxial cable being FF400LSFROH (~RG-214/LMR400).

Maximum Coaxial Cable Length		
Cable Type	24 VDC Supply	
FF400LSFROH (10.3mm) 150		

 Table 10: Maximum coaxial cable length (cable examples)

The cable length calculated in Table 10 are obtained by using the maximum DC resistance $[\Omega]$ from Table 9 and compare these maximum DC requirements with the actual DC resistance $[\Omega/km]$ of the specific coaxial cables. The FF400LSFROH and FF195LSFROX total DC resistance numbers are listed in Table 11 on page 39.

The total DC resistance for the cable (FF400LSFROH) is:

Total DC Resistance (Inner and Outer Conductor)			
Cable Type Inner Conductor DC		Outer Conductor DC	Total DC Resistance
	Resistance [Ω/km]	Resistance [Ω/km]	[Ω/km]
FF400LSFROH (10.3 mm)	4.5	6.5	11

Table 11: Total DC resistance (cable example)

- IMPORTANT:If using a coaxial cable that is different to what is specified in this section
(FF195LSFROH and FF400LSFROH), then verify that the RF and DC coaxial cable
requirements (Table 8 and Table 9) are respected and calculate the maximum cable
length as a function of the input voltage and the total DC resistance. Contact Lars
Thrane A/S to get assistance on selection and acceptance of a specific coaxial cable
- **NOTE**: The LT-4210S Control Unit must be powered off when connecting or disconnecting the LT-4230 Antenna Unit.

LT-3140S Interface Unit

The LT-3140S Interface Unit is designed for indoor mounting and connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit via an Ethernet cable. The LT-3140S Interface Unit specifications are available in *App. H - Specifications* on page 260.



Figure 42: LT-3140S Interface Unit

Cable strain relief must be used for securing all cables connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit.

The LT-3140S Interface Unit interfaces and number of interfaces are listed in Table 12.

The LT-3140S Interface Unit must be used if connecting LT-3150S Alarm Panel, LT-3160S Printer Adapter, SSAS Alert button, or SSAS Test button. The two RS-422 bi-directional interfaces can be used for GNSS, BAM, and MSI, which is further described in *Serial Interface (RS-422)* on page 177 and the configuration in the *Web server* on page 190. The LT-4210S Control Unit also has a RS-422 interface to support these functions. The layout of the LT-3140S Interface Unit (incl. labels) is illustrated in Figure 43 on page 41. Interface name and wire color descriptions are available on all interfaces to make the connection easy.

LT-3140S Interface Unit		
Interface	Number of	Name
	Interfaces	
Ethernet	4	LAN 1 to 4
RS-422	2	RS-422 1 and RS-422 2
SSAS	4	SSAS Alarm 1 to 3, and SSAS Test
CAN	4	Alarm Panel 1 to 3, and Printer Adapter
DC input	1	PWR (12 or 24 VDC input)
Chassis ground	1	GNDC (connect to vessel ground)

Table 12: LT-3140S Interface Unit



Figure 43: LT-3140S Interface Unit (with interface labels)

3 x spare Ethernet (LAN) interfaces are available on the LT-3140S Interface Unit to support future information protocols. It is possible to service the LT-4200S GMDSS system by connecting an external PC to one of these spare LAN ports (e.g., for software update of the system or downloading a diagnostic report).

NOTE:LT-4210S Control Unit must be connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit 'LAN 1' port.
Otherwise, the LT-4210S Control Unit will not detect the LT-3140S Interface Unit.NOTE:LT-4200S GMDSS system is permitted to be connected to an IEC 61162 Ethernet network.NOTE:All RS-422 interfaces on both the LT-4210S Control Unit and LT-3140S Interface Unit are
compliant with IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and IEC 61162-450. BAM can only be activated on
a single RS-422 interface.NOTE:The LT-3140S Interface Unit must be connected to the power supply using a 5 A external
fuse.

RS-422 (RS-422 1 & RS-422 2)

The RS-422 interfaces supported from the LT-3140S Interface Unit are shown in Table 13 and Table 14.

LT-3140S IU (RS-422 1)		
Pin Connector Name	Signal Designation	
Rx+	RS-422 A (input)	
Rx-	RS-422 B (input)	
Tx+	RS-422 Y (output)	
Tx-	RS-422 Z (output)	
СОМ	RS-422 (C) common	

Table 13: LT-3140S IU (RS-422 1)

LT-3140S IU (RS-422 2)		
Pin Connector Name	Signal Designation	
Rx+	RS-422 A (input)	
Rx-	RS-422 B (input)	
Tx+	RS-422 Y (output)	
Tx-	RS-422 Z (output)	
COM	RS-422 (C) common	

Table 14: LT-3140S IU (RS-422 2)

RS-422 Circuit Diagram (LT-3140S IU - RS-422 1 and RS-422 2)

Figure 44 shows the RSS-422 circuit diagram used for the LT-3140S Interface Unit (RS-422 1 and RS-422 2).



Figure 44: RS-422 Circuit Diagram for the LT-3140S IU

Interface Drive Capability as a Talker and Listener:

- A (Rx+), B (Rx-), Y (Tx+), Z (Tx-): -60V to +60V
- Short circuit protected
- Galvanic isolated up to 1500V

SSAS (SSAS Alarm 1 to 3 & SSAS Test)

The LT-3140S Interface Unit is supporting up to 3 x SSAS Alert buttons and 1 x SSAS Test button. The LT-3140S Interface Unit must be used when wiring SSAS Alert and SSAS Test buttons for the LT-4200S GMDSS System. The LT-3140S Interface Unit layout and marking of terminal blocks 'SSAS Alarm 1', 'SSAS Alarm 2', 'SSAS Alarm 3', and 'SSAS Test' is illustrated in Figure 43 on page 41.

SSAS Alert button (incl. 50m cable)

The SSAS Alert button will be delivered with 50m cable attached to the push button actuator. The cable must be connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit matching the wire colors, which are marked for each SSAS Alert button (marked: SSAS Alarm 1, SSAS Alarm 2, and SSAS Alarm 3). During installation it must be verified that the cable and wires are matching the documentation in this section.

SSAS Alert button



Figure 46: SSAS Alert button (front)



Figure 45: SSAS Alert button (back)



Figure 47: SSAS Alert button wiring diagram



Figure 48: SSAS Alert button (back)

Interface protected:

- Short circuit protected
- ESD protected
- DC voltage protected (±45 VDC)

SSAS Test button (incl. 50m cable)

The SSAS Test button will be delivered with 50m cable attached to the push button actuator. The cable must be connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit matching the wire colors, which are marked for the SSAS Test button (marked: SSAS Test). During installation it must be verified that the cable and wires are matching the documentation in this section.





Figure 49: SSAS Test button (front)

Figure 50: SSAS Test button (back)



Figure 51: SSAS Test button wiring diagram



Figure 52: SSAS Test button (back)

Interface protected:

- Short circuit protected
- ESD protected
- DC voltage protected (±45 VDC)
- **NOTE**: The SSAS functionality is further described in *Ship Security Alert System (SSAS)* on page 182. The configuration of the SSAS is described and illustrated in the web server, configuration, *SSAS* on page 201.

DC input (PWR)

The LT-3140S Interface Unit is designed to be used on 12 VDC and 24 VDC power buses (nominal). External DC power to the LT-3140S Interface Unit is provided by connecting a DC cable (plus/minus), incl. crimp tubes, to the DC input power connector. The power connector on the LT-3140S Interface Unit is marked with 'PWR'. All connectors on the LT-3140S Interface Unit are hidden below a front cover as illustrated in Figure 21 on page 21.

The power source for the LT-4200S GMDSS System must comply with the GMDSS regulations and the associated standards, minimum is compliance to IEC 60945 (2002). The power source to LT-4210S Control Unit and the LT-3140S Interface Unit must be connected to the main and emergency source of power as required by SOLAS reg II-1/42 or /43, and a battery backup system. When extending the power supply cables the positive (+) and the negative (-) must be installed closely together in order to keep the cable inductance low.

IMPORTANT:	It is required that the LT-3140S Interface Unit uses the same power source as the LT-4210S Control Unit. The two units cannot use different power sources according to standards.
NOTE:	Make sure to use a galvanic isolated power supply as illustrated in <i>Galvanic Isolated Power Supply</i> on page 50.
NOTE:	The input voltage range is: 12-24 VDC (0.7-0.4 A). The LT-3140S Interface Unit DC input connector and circuit is protected and certified for reverse polarity protection.
NOTE:	The DC input power source must be connected to a battery backup system (requirement for all SOLAS vessels). The power source and battery backup system are not provided by Lars Thrane A/S.
NOTE:	It may be noted that for vessels without an emergency source of power it may be possible to install the LT-4200S GMDSS system, if the capacity of the reserve source (battery backup) is at least 6 hours.
NOTE:	The LT-3140S Interface Unit must be connected to the power supply using a 5 A circuit breaker. See <i>Galvanic Isolated Power Supply</i> on page 50.

Chassis ground (GNDC)

The chassis ground connector is placed underneath the front cover of the LT-3140S Interface Unit and marked with 'GNDC', see Figure 42 on page 40.

IMPORTANT: Only DC input power: 12 to 24 VDC must be applied on the LT-3140S Interface Unit. Crimp tubes on the DC power cable must be used.

Power Consumption

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is powered from a 24 VDC power source. This section will provide power consumption details for maximum power consumption and typical average power consumption to be used for calculating the back-up battery capacity, which is a requirement for GMDSS equipment onboard SOLAS vessels.

Maximum

The LT-4200S GMDSS system maximum power consumption is listed in Table 15. The maximum power consumption is calculated with activity on all interfaces. The peak power is based on 8A on a 19.2 VDC with at 150m cable.

24 VDC Maximum Power Consumption (Watt)		
System Unit Power [W]		
LT-4210S CU	154.0	
LT-3140S IU	10.0	
Total Power (maximum)	164.0	

Table 15: Maximum Power Consumption (24 VDC input)

The coaxial cable length is an adding factor to the total power consumption of the system. A short coaxial cable will add approximately ~0 W to the total power consumption. Whereas a coaxial cable with a maximum length will add ~16 W (24 VDC input) to the total power consumption. The supported coaxial cable lengths for the LT-4200S GMDSS system are described in *LT-4230 Antenna Unit* on page 38.

DC Isolation Resistance and Chassis Ground

The LT-4200S system must be installed properly with respect to DC isolation resistance and chassis ground. Wrong installations can lead to DC isolation issues (low Ohm meter measuring) on board the vessel and equipment damages. This section will provide details about installation precautions, which must be followed.

LT-4210S Control Unit (back view) with an upscaled power connector are illustrated in Figure 53. The Chassis ground (GNDC) must be connected sufficiently to the vessel ground. 91-102218 Power Cable, 3m must be used to connect the LT-4210S Control Unit to the vessel 24 VDC power source. DC isolation resistance measured on a disconnected LT-4210S Control Unit between GNDC and VDC (-) > 50 M Ω .



Figure 53: LT-4210 Control Unit (VDC(+), VDC(-), and GNDC)

The LT-4230 Antenna Unit (bottom view) is illustrated in Figure 54. Chassis ground (GNDC) on the LT-4230 Antenna Unit is defined as the mechanics (connected to the mounts).



Figure 54: LT-4230 Antenna Unit (VDC(+), VDC(-), and GNDC)

DC isolation resistance measured on a disconnected LT-4230 Antenna Unit between GNDC and VDC (-) > 50 M Ω . VDC (-) and VDC (+) is respectfully the N connector thread and the N connector center conductor. Figure 55 is illustrating the LT-4200S GMDSS system consisting of LT-4210S Control Unit, LT-4230 Antenna Unit, and the coaxial cable connecting these two units.



Figure 55: Definitions of VDC (+), VDC (-), and GNDC

It is important that the coaxial cable, connected to both the LT-4210S Control Unit and LT-4230 Antenna Unit, is <u>not</u> grounded in any of the ends. Do not connect the coaxial cable shield to vessel ground. The coaxial cable N connector must only be connected directly to the N connector of the two units.

NOTE: Make sure that the LT-4230 Antenna Unit is connected sufficiently to vessel ground. Also, make sure that the N connector on the LT-4230 Antenna Unit, VDC (-) is not connected to the LT-4230 Antenna Unit mechanics, GNDC. It is important to adhere to this requirement so as not to get a bad DC isolation resistance.

Galvanic Isolated Power Supply

Use an IEC 60945 approved AC/DC or DC/DC galvanic isolated power supply for the LT-4200S GMDSS system (LT-4210S Control Unit). A 15 A external fuse must be used for both AC/DC and DC/DC power supply units as seen on Figure 56 and Figure 57.

AC/DC Galvanic Isolated Power Supply

Connection of an AC/DC galvanic isolated power supply is illustrated in Figure 56.



Figure 56: AC/DC Galvanic Isolated Power Supply

DC/DC Galvanic Isolated Power Supply

Connection of an DC/DC galvanic isolated power supply is illustrated in Figure 57.



Figure 57: DC/DC Galvanic Isolated Power Supply

Battery Power Supply with AC/DC Galvanic Isolated Charger

Connection of 24 VDC battery connected to a galvanic isolated AC/DC Charger is illustrated in Figure 58.



Figure 58: Battery Power Supply

User Interface (UI)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is controlled from the LT-4210S Control Unit, which is the interface for operating and configuring the system. The control unit has a 4.3" TFT-LCD display, supporting day and night modes. The layout of the display and buttons are illustrated in Figure 59.



Figure 59: Control Unit (front view) - user interface display and buttons.

The control unit buttons, functions and features, are described in the following groups:

- Power & DIM button: The power button can restart the system by pressing the button for 5 seconds. A pop-up box will show the action, and a counter will count down until the system is powered off. If the external power source to the system is re-powered, then the system will power on automatically. To activate the DIM functionality, short press the Power & DIM button. Short press (1 < s); brightness level will change between 7 levels. Long press (≥ 1 s); will change the display mode. The display brightness level and display mode can be changed from the menu as well (MENU -> Settings -> Display).
- **DISTRESS button:** Lift the red lid and press the DISTRESS button for a minimum of 3 seconds to activate a Distress. A Distress Activated window will be visible as soon as a Distress has been activated via the DISTRESS button.
- Off-hook button: The button is illustrated with a green colored handset. The function of the offhook button is to activate a call, if the dialed number is available in the display or a contact is selected in the Contacts or Call History. The off-hook button can also be used to accept an incoming call. The alternative to use the off-hook button is to lift the handset out of the cradle. If the offhook button is used and the handset remain in the cradle, the phone audio will be available in the control unit speaker. The microphone is muted, if the handset remains in the cradle - indicated with an icon in the status bar.
- **On-hook button:** The button is illustrated with a red colored handset. Pressing the on-hook button will terminate an active call.
- MENU / BAM button: The MENU button is used to open the main menu. The BACK, Navigation (arrows), and ENTER buttons are used to navigate in the menu. Press the MENU button to exit the menu from anywhere in the menu tree (instead of multiple BACK button presses). Long press (> 1 s) the MENU / BAM button and the BAM Alert List will be shown.

- **Soft keys buttons**: Three soft keys are available in the bottom of the display. The soft keys are used for different purposes and their functions will change in the operation modes of the system.
- **Navigation buttons**: The navigation buttons (BACK, arrows, and ENTER) are used for navigation purposes in the menu layout. In context of user input or when making selections, the BACK button will erase input or cancel editing respectfully, the ENTER button will end input or apply selection respectfully.
- Numeric Keypad buttons: The numeric keypad buttons, the '*' button, and the '+' button can be used for entering digits, letters and special characters. Depending on context, pressing one button in rapid succession (< 1s) will cycle through a selection of letters, digits and/or special characters (e.g. when entering a phone number, pressing the '*' character twice in succession will result in one '+' character and not two '*' characters).

An icon in the status bar will show the current input mode, indicating which characters can be cycled - if any. In text mode, the '#' key is used to change between capital and lowercase letters. While the DIM / Brightness pop-up is visible it is possible to use the keypad buttons to adjust the brightness.

Display

The display contains three sections as illustrated in Figure 60: Status bar, view area and soft keys.



Figure 60: LT-4210S Control Unit (display sections)

The essential system status and system notifications are shown in the status bar, which is always present.

The view area contains the active view. The active view is changed by navigating the UI using the MENU and navigation buttons. The text and function of the soft key's changes dynamically with the active view. The soft keys can also change without changing view depending on the activity in the active view.

The Recommended viewing distance is 68 cm, at which all data is readable under all light conditions.

The general level of the brightness can be varied through 7 steps from 5 cd/m² up to 560 cd/m² on white background in "Day mode". The display also has a "Night mode" (inverted graphics) with additional 7 steps.

It has been verified through measurements that dense text information areas on black background emits light equivalent to 1 cd/m^2 . All measurements through all light levels in the two modes demonstrates a minimum contrast level of 350:1.

The status bar has a dedicated section for presenting time and position and 7 slots for system status icons.



Figure 61: LT-4210S Control Unit (status bar)

NOTE:The status bar contains a flashing square in the upper left corner to verify that the display
never freezes, see Figure 61 on page 54. The flashing square is always visible on the display.
The square is not illustrated on other figures throughout this manual.

Each slot shows the status of one function or group of functions. If a group of functions in a slot has more than one active icon, the slot will continuously take turn showing one icon at a time for a few seconds before cycling to the icon of the next function.

	Network Status - Slot 1		
×	The LT-4200s system has no satellite signal and is not registered on the Iridium [®] Network.		
.al	The LT-4200s system has satellite signal = 0 and is registered on the Iridium [®] Network.		
.11	The LT-4200s system has satellite signal = 1 and registered on the Iridium [®] Network.		
	The LT-4200s system has satellite signal = 5 and registered on the Iridium [®] Network.		

Table 16: LT-4210S Control Unit - status bar (network status)

	Iridium Service - Slot 2	
S.	Active voice call or off-hook mode.	
%	Voice service unavailable due to an unspecified error	
₽	There is an active data connection.	
X	Data service unavailable due to an unspecified error	
₹	Idle data connection	

Table 17: LT-4210 Control Unit - UI Iridium service

	Notifications - Slot 3	
2	There are one or more missed calls.	
90	There are one or more voicemail messages.	
\boxtimes	There are one or more unread MSI messages or Safety Messages.	

Table 18: LT-4210S Control Unit - status bar (notifications)

	Audio - Slot 4
¥	The microphone on the handset is muted.

Table 19: LT-4210S Control Unit - status bar (audio)

	Input Mode - Slot 5		
<u>123</u>	The numeric keypad can be used to enter a phone number or numeric number.		
<u>Abc</u>	The numeric keypad can be used to enter text. The first letter of a sentence will be in upper case.		
<u>abc</u>	The numeric keypad can be used to enter text. All letters will be in lower case.		
<u>ABC</u>	The numeric keypad can be used to enter text. All letters will be in upper case.		

Table 20: LT-4210S Control Unit - status bar (input mode)

Miscellaneous Functions - Slot 6		
	The Commercial Tracking service is enabled.	

Table 21: LT-4210S Control Unit - status bar (miscellaneous functions)

	BAM Status - Slot 7	
۲	Active - unacknowledged warning	
×	Active - silenced warning	
!	Active - acknowledged warning	
→	Active - responsibility transferred warning	
<	Rectified - unacknowledged warning	
!	Active caution	

Table 22: LT-42105 Control Unit - status bar (BAM status
--

The display on the LT-4210S Control Unit has the ability to show 16 lines of 40 characters at a character height of 2.9mm. The amount of procurable text and readability of the LT-4210S Control Unit can be seen on the figures below. A simulator was used to insert character lines as this is not a view the user of the system can procure:



40x16 characters at 2.9mm height (3.6mm/m at 0.8m)

Figure 62: LT-4210S Control Unit (display sections)

40x16 characters on 480x272 pixels



Figure 63: LT-4210S Control Unit (display sections)

Menu System

The LT-4200S GMDSS system main menu is opened by pressing the MENU button on the keypad. The user will be presented with a layout as illustrated in Figure 64.

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:05 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	llı.
GMDSS Phone Settings System	
MSI Messages	
Safety Contacts	
Safety Messages	
MSI Schedule	
MSI Settings	

MENU / Submenu Layout			
Submenus	Entries		
GMDSS	MSI Messages		
	Safety Contacts		
	Safety Messages		
	MSI Schedule		
	MSI Settings		
	Distress Settings		
	Position Settings		
	Printer Settings		
	Location Information		
	SES Information		
	Terminal Test		
Phone	Contacts		
	Call History		
	Phone Usage		
Settings	Audio		
	Display		
	Date & Time		
	Phone Setup		
	IP Data		
	Remote Access		
	Reset Options		
System	BAM Alerts		
	Network		
	SIP Phones		
	GNSS Status		
	LRIT Status		
	Subscription		
	System Info		
	Power Supply		
	Certification		

Figure 64: LT-4210S Control Unit (MENU layout)

Table 23: LT-4210S Control Unit (MENU and submenus)

The main menu is represented by four submenus: GMDSS, Phone, Settings, and System. The four submenus are listed in Table 23.



Figure 65: GMDSS submenu

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:05 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	
GMDSS Phone Settings System	Phone s
Call History Phone Usage	MENU -

Phone submenu: MENU -> Phone

System submenu: MENU -> System

Figure 66: Phone submenu

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:05 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E GMDSS Phone Settings System Audio Display Date & Time Phone Setup UD Data	
POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E GMDSS Phone Settings System Audio Display Date & Time Phone Setup UD Data	
GMDSS Phone Settings System Audio Display MENU -> Settings Date & Time Phone Setup ID Data	
Audio Settings subn Display MENU -> Settings Date & Time Phone Setup	
Display MENU -> Seti Date & Time Phone Setup	menu
Date & Time Phone Setup	ttings
Phone Setup	
ID Data	
IP Dala	

Figure 67: Settings submenu

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:05 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E	.all
GMDSS Phone Settings System	
BAM Alerts	
Network	
SIP Phones	
GNSS Status	
LRIT Status	

Figure 68: System submenu
Activating the System

A few things must be completed before you can have an operational LT-4200S GMDSS system on board your vessel. It is assumed that you have received the LT-4200S GMDSS system from the Lars Thrane A/S GMDSS certified partner - this could be directly or indirectly. The Lars Thrane A/S GMDSS certified partners have completed technical training and will be able to assist you with all the questions you might have to the product or service. The Lars Thrane A/S GMDSS certified partners are listed on the company's website: <u>https://www.thrane.eu</u>

The following steps are required for activating the LT-4200S GMDSS system:

- Iridium Certus GMDSS SIM card
- Iridium Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF)
- Completing the Installation Wizard
- Completing Radio Survey

The LT-4200S GMDSS system installation and mounting is described in the previous sections. The LT-4200S GMDSS system must complete an Iridium MSSAF form (list the ICCID of the GMDSS SIM card and IMEI number of the LT-4230 Antenna Unit) and all the vessel details, before the Installation Wizard can be started and then activate the system on the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS).

IMPORTANT: In order for the LT-4200S GMDSS system to be deemed operational and ready for continuous service: i) it must be correctly installed per the specifications in the User & Installation Manual of the LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications System ("LT-4200S GMDSS User & Installation Manual"), ii) the LT-4200S Installation Wizard must have been completed successfully, and iii) the Iridium GMDSS SIM card, which serves to evidence that a terminal has been subscribed to Iridium's Network, has been secured and correctly installed. The Iridium GMDSS SIM card is at all times required for operation of the GMDSS equipment and is a critical and indispensable part of the LT-4200S GMDSS system. Without a valid Iridium GMDSS SIM card correctly installed and continuously maintained in the inserted position in the LT-4210S Control Unit, pursuant to the instructions in the LT-4200S GMDSS User & Installation Manual, the terminal is not an operational GMDSS terminal and not ready and available for continuous use on any vessel. Vessel operators are mandated by International Maritime Organization regulations to ensure the continued operation of any GMDSS terminal (whether a primary terminal or backup unit) installed on their vessels. The Iridium GMDSS SIM card is, as previously described, required at all times for the proper operation of the Iridium LT-4200S GMDSS system and is considered a critical component of the GMDSS equipment.

Acquire a Certus GMDSS SIM card

An Iridium Certus GMDSS SIM card must be used for activating a LT-4200S GMDSS system. The Certus GMDSS SIM card is described and illustrated in *Certus GMDSS SIM card* (**SIM**) on page 32. The Certus GMDSS SIM card may be acquired directly from your Lars Thrane A/S certified partner. The ICCID number (uniquely identifies the Certus GMDSS SIM card) must be used for completing the Iridium MSSAF form. The Certus GMDSS SIM card must be inserted in the LT-4210S Control Unit before powering up the system and starting the Installation Wizard. The Installation Wizard is described in *Installation Wizard* on page 63.

Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF)

To complete the Iridium Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF), you must contact your Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) or Lars Thrane A/S GMDSS certified partner. The Iridium website will have an up-to-date list of approved Iridium GMDSS Service Providers (SP): <u>https://www.iridium.com/services/gmdss/</u>

Table 24 provides an overview of the details required in order to complete the MSSAF. The Iridium GMDSS Service provider (SP) might require further details, hereunder accounting.

Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF)		
Vessel Information Terminal Information		
Vessel Name	SOLAS Vessel (yes or no)	
Vessel Type	SES1 or SES2	
Vessel Build Year	IMEI (system identification)	
Vessel Tonnage	ICCID (GMDSS SIM Card)	
Vessel Fleet Name	Type of Terminal	
Vessel Nation Flag		
Vessel IMO No.	Emergency Contact Details:	
Vessel MMSI	Company / Name (incl. address)	
Vessel Call Sign	Emergency Contact Name	
Vessel Port of Registry	Emergency Phone	
Vessel Person Capacity	Emergency E-mail	

Table 24: MSSAF (details required)

- **IMPORTANT**: The person completing the MSSAF is fully responsible for the information provided Vessel and Terminal Information must match the actual data.
- NOTE: The Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) might use another wording for the Iridium Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF). However, it is recommended referring to the MSSAF when contacting your Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) or Lars Thrane A/S GMDSS certified partner.

Who's My Service Provider

Iridium has a website where they inform about the specific Service Provider (SP) who has activated the LT-4200S GMDSS system (or any other Iridium activated product).

Use the following link: <u>https://www.iridium.com/who-is-my-sp/</u>

···· iridium	Company Careers Our Legacy Press Investors Blog Store Portal Network Solutions ~ Products ~ Services ~ Support ~
Who's My Service Provider	?
Select Type:	19 digit number starts with 8988, no spaces Search

Figure 69: Iridium - Who's My Service Provider

You can use the following information:

- ICCID (GMDSS SIM card serial number)
- MSISDN (Mobile Subscriber ISDN number)
- **NOTE**: The Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) must be contacted for any changes to the GMDSS provisioning. 'Who's My Service Provider' will inform you where your LT-4200S GMDSS system is provisioned.

Installation Wizard

The Installation Wizard must be completed after the installation has been finished and the LT-4200S GMDSS system is powered up for the first time. The Installation Wizard consist of the following steps: Detection of Wizard, MENU Key, System Settings, System Configuration, Download GMDSS Configuration, Select Distress RCC, System Verification, and System Activation, as illustrated in Table 25. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will only be fully functional and legal to operate when the Installation Wizard has been completed and the following text has been shown at the end of the Installation Wizard: 'The system is now ready for use.'

NOTE:The Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) may send the LT-4200S GMDSS system an updated
GMDSS Configuration file as changes in the IGS requires this (e.g. new RCC added). The
GMDSS Configuration file will automatically be pushed to the LT-4200S GMDSS system.

Installation vs. Service Wizard			
Steps	Installation Wizard	Service Wizard	Comments
Detection of Wizard	Х	Х	Installation or Service
MENU Key	Х	-	Details available
System Settings	Х	-	
System Configuration	Х	Х	
Download GMDSS Configuration	Х	Х	
Select Distress RCC	Х	-	Automatic or Manual
System Verification	Х	Х	Distress Alert,
			Distress Call, MSI,
			Alarm Panels*and
			Printer*.
System Activation (OTA)	Х	Х	Over-the-Air (OTA)

Table 25: Installation vs. Service Wizard

- NOTE: The LT-4200S GMDSS system must use a correct Iridium Certus GMDSS SIM card, which is received and activated from a Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) or a Lars Thrane A/S GMDSS certified partner. Make sure that the LT-4200S GMDSS system and the GMDSS SIM card is activated correctly prior to running the Installation Wizard, as described and illustrated in this section.
- **NOTE**: LT-3140S: Alarm Panels and Printer will only be verified if connected to the LT-4210S CU.
- **IMPORTANT**: The LT-4200S GMDSS system will not be functional before the Installation Wizard has succesfully been completed. Please contact your Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) or Lars Thrane A/S GMDSS certified partner to handle any potential problem.

Detection of Wizard

LT-4200S Installation Wizard

Congratulations with your new LT-4200S GMDSS System.

This wizard will guide you through the configuration, verification and activation of the system.

The Installation Wizard will be displayed when powering up the system initially, and until activation completed.

Next

Figure 70: Installation Wizard (1 of 36)

MENU Key

MENU key	lin.
To see device details during this wizard, short press the MENU key. If an error occurs, access the BAM Alerts with a long press (hold) on the MENU key.	
Previous	Next

The MENU key can be used to access details (short press) during completion of the Installation Wizard.

Details		lh.
	System	
System Number	LT-4200S	
Software Version	1.00R	
IMEI	3000080603294	10
ICCID	8988169727000	001019
	Network	
Link Status	Up	
	10 1 10 70	
Restart Wizard	Ba	ick

Figure 71: Installation Wizard (2 of 36)

Details information (part 1 of 2).

Figure 72: Installation Wizard (3 of 36)

Details	
Software Version IMEI ICCID	1.00R 300008060329410 8988169727000001019
	Network
Link Status	Up
IP Address	10.1.10.72
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
MAC Address	F0:D4:F6:01:80:D7
Restart Wizard	Back

(part 2 of 2).

Select date format.

Details information

Figure 73: Installation Wizard (4 of 36)

System Settings



Figure 74: Installation Wizard (5 of 36)

	the set		
Reg	jional Settings	illi.	
Please	select time format		Select time format.
24 hours			
12 hours			
Previous		Next	

Figure 75: Installation Wizard (6 of 36)

GNSS Receiver	lh.	
Please select a configuration for the receiver (position and time).	GNSS	Selec
GPS, SBAS, GLONASS GLONASS BeiDou		confi serve
Previous	Next	time

Figure 76: Installation Wizard (7 of 36)

Select GNSS receiver configuration (can be configured via the web server at another time).

System Configuration

System Configuration		I
Please wait while discovering units in the system.		
Status Completed Progress		
Previous Next		_

The LT-4210S CU is searching for LT-4200S GMDSS system units part of the setup.



System Configuration		ll
🗸 Antenna Unit		
🗸 Interface Unit		
🗸 Alarm Panel 1		
🗸 Alarm Panel 2		
🗸 Alarm Panel 3		
🗸 Printer Adapter	🗸 Printer	
Reject	Conf	irm

The LT-4210S CU has identified the following LT-4200S GMDSS system units, confirm to continue.

Figure 78: Installation Wizard (9 of 36)

Network Registration	
Please wait for registration of	on the network.
SIM Card	Ok
Position & Time Ok	
Iridium Service Ok	
Signal Quality	Good
Previous Next	

Figure 79: Installation Wizard (10 of 36)

Download GMDSS Configuration

OTA Configuration	
Please wait while the system downloads the GMDSS configuration from Iridium.	
Status Connecting	
Progress	
Signal Quality	Good

Previous

Figure 80: Installation Wizard (11 of 36)

OTA Configuration			
Please wait while the system downloads the GMDSS configuration from Iridium.			
Status Downloading			
Progress	Progress		
Signal Quality Good			
Previous			

Figure 81: Installation Wizard (12 of 36)

OTA Configuration			
Please wait while the system downloads the GMDSS configuration from Iridium.			
Status	Completed		
Progress	Progress		
Signal Quality	Good		
Previous	Next		

Figure 82: Installation Wizard (13 of 36)

Check that everything is ready for starting the configuration of the LT-4200S GMDSS system towards the Iridium network.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is downloading the GMDSS Configuration file (connecting).

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is downloading the GMDSS Configuration file (downloading).

The LT-4200S GMDSS system has downloaded the GMDSS Configuration file (completed).

Vessel Information			lh.
Please verify the below vessel information from the Iridium activation form.			on
	Vessel Name	GW GMDSS CERT- US TEST 1	
	Vessel MMSI	999999800	
	Vessel IMO no.	9999800	
R	eject	Conf	ïrm

Verify the vessel details, which are provided in the Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF) 'Iridium activation form'.

Figure 83: Installation Wizard (14 of 36)

Vessel Information	
Please verify the below vessel information from the Iridium activation form.	V
Ship Earth SES1 Station Name	SI
Reject Confirm	

Figure 84: Installation Wizard (15 of 36)

Verify the Ship Earth Station Name (SES1 or SES2).

Select Distress RCC: Automatic or Manual (can be configured in Distress Settings at another time).

Select Distress RCC

Distress RCC	Il
Please select your Distress RCC.	
Automatic	
Manual	
Previous Next	

Figure 85: Installation Wizard (16 of 36)

System Verification

System Verification

You have completed configuration of the system.

This wizard will now guide you through a few steps to verify the GMDSS safety functions work correctly.

Next

.all

Figure 86: Installation Wizard (17 of 36)

The configuration has been completed. Now the GMDSS Safety Service functions must be verified. **IMPORTANT**: The LT-4200S GMDSS system has now been configured. In order to verify that the LT-4200S GMDSS system GMDSS Safety Functions (Distress Alert, Distress Call, and MSI) are working correctly - these functions will now be tested. The LT-4200S GMDSS system is sending the Distress Alert in 'test mode'. The Distress Call will be connected to a voice prompt, reaching the Iridium GMDSS Server (IGS). A Rescue Coordination Center (RCC) will not be involved as part of the testing and verification.



Figure 87: Installation Wizard (18 of 36)



The DISTRESS button must be held for a minimum of 3 seconds to activate a Distress.

Lift the lid and press

the DISTRESS button

on the LT-4210S

Control Unit.

Figure 88: Installation Wizard (19 of 36)

Verify Distress	Verify Distress (CU):
You have initiated verification. Please wait for the Distress Alert and Distress Call to complete.	Distress Alert: In progress
Distress Alert In Progress Distress Call Pending	

Figure 89: Installation Wizard (20 of 36)

Lars Thrane A/S

Verify Distress (CU):

Distress Alert: Passed Distress Call: In Progress (voice prompt available)

Verify Distress		all
You have initiated verification. Please wait for the Distress Alert and Distress Call to complete.		
Distress Alert	Passed	
Distress Call	InFlogress	

Figure 90: Installation Wizard (21 of 36)

Verify Di	stress	
You have initiated verif for the Distress Alert a	ication. Please wait nd Distress Call to	Verify Distress (CU):
complete.		Distress Alert: Passed
Distress Alert	Passed	Distress Call: Passed
Distress Call	Passed	
Retry	Next	

Figure 91: Installation Wizard (22 of 36)

Ve	rify MSI	l	
Please wait for MSI	verification to com	plete.	Verify MSI:
MSI	In Progres	55	MSI: In Progress

Figure 92: Installation Wizard (23 of 36)

Verify	MSI .II	1
Please wait for MSI veri MSI	fication to complete. Passed	Verify MSI: MSI: Passed
Retry	Next	_

Figure 93: Installation Wizard (24 of 36)

Lift the lid and do a

on each connected

Alarm Panel

short press (< 3 sec) of the DISTRESS button

Verification of additional units



Figure 94: Installation Wizard (25 of 36)

Verify Alarm I	Panel(s)	Il	
Verification completes wh button has been pressed o Alarm Panel 1 Alarm Panel 2 Alarm Panel 3	nen the DISTRES on all Alarm Pane Passed	S els.	Alarm Panel 1 has passed the test. Continue by short pressing DISTRESS on the other Alarm Panels

Figure 95: Installation Wizard (26 of 36)

Verify Alarm Panel(s)		
Verification completes when the DISTRESS button has been pressed on all Alarm Panels.		
Alarm Panel 1 Alarm Panel 2	Passed Passed	
Alarm Panel 3	Passed	
Retry	Next	

All Alarm Panels have passed the test, press Next to continue.

Figure 96: Installation Wizard (27 of 36)



Figure 97: Installation Wizard (28 of 36)

If a Printer is connected with a Printer Adaptor, the Printer is verified through the next steps



Figure 98: Installation Wizard (29 of 36)

Test Results

Test Res	atl	
GMDSS Test has completed.		
Distress Alert	Passed	
Distress Call	Passed	
MSI	Passed	
Alarm Panel 1	Passed	
Alarm Panel 2	Passed	
	Nex	t

Figure 99: Installation Wizard (30 of 36)

The results of the
system verification are
listed in the Test
Results screen
Test Results (Top view)

Test Results		
GMDSS Test has	completed.	
MSI	Passed	
Alarm Panel 1	Passed	
Alarm Panel 2	Passed	
Alarm Panel 3	Passed	
Printer	Passed	
	Nex	

Figure 100: Installation Wizard (31 of 36)

Test Results (Bottom view)

-

System Activation

System Activation	llı.	
You have completed verification of the system. This wizard will now guide you through activation of the system.	the	Va G fu co
Ne	ext	
	201	

Verification of Distress GMDSS Safety Service functions have been completed successfully.

Figure 101: Installation Wizard (32 of 36)

OTA Activation		
Please wait while t activated at Iridiun	he system is being n.	
Status Signal Quality	Connecting Good	

Figure 102: Installation Wizard (33 of 36)

OTA Activation		
Please wait while the system is being activated at Iridium.		
Status Signal Quality	Activating Good	

OTA Activation:

OTA Activation:

(Over-The-Air)

Status: Connecting

Status: Activating

Figure 103: Installation Wizard (34 of 36)

OTA Activation			
Please wait while th activated at Iridium.	e system is being		OTA Activation:
Status Signal Quality	Activated Good		Status: Activated
	Next		

Figure 104: Installation Wizard (35 of 36)

Installation Completed
You have successfully completed installation, verification and activation of this LT-4200S GMDSS System.
The system is now ready for use.
Done

The LT-4200S GMDSS system has now been successfully activated the system is ready for use.

Figure 105: Installation Wizard (36 of 36)

The Installation Wizard has now been completed successfully and the LT-4200S GMDSS System is now ready for use!

NOTE: The Installation Wizard will be displayed after powering up of the LT-4200S GMDSS system initially or if the system has been factory reset from the web server.

Radio Survey

Once the LT-4200S GMDSS system has been physically installed, connected, and the Installation Wizard has been completed successfully, the system must be verified by conducting a GMDSS Radio Survey by an authorized person representing a Classification Society (e.g. DNV). The GMDSS Radio Survey must be completed by a person who has received technical training directly or indirectly and understand the capabilities and services of the LT-4200S GMDSS system. National flag authorities and their regulations for radio survey must be followed.

IMPORTANT: The LT-4200S GMDSS system operational status cannot be considered seaworthy, before an official GMDSS Radio Survey has been completed successfully, accordingly to the SOLAS IMO resolutions.

Test of Distress Alert, Distress Call, and MSI

The LT-4200S GMDSS system support test of Distress Alert, Distress Call, and MSI (in test mode). These tests are performed as part of the following LT-4200S GMDSS system wizards:

- Installation Wizard (see *Installation Wizard* on page 63)
- Service Wizard (see *Service Wizard* on page 78)
- GMDSS Test Wizard (see *Terminal Test* on page 129) can be activated by the user at any time

In test mode, the LT-4200S GMDSS system is verifying the Distress functions towards the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS), indicating test mode and therefore the Rescue Coordination Centers (RCC) will not be involved.

NOTE: In test mode, when activating the DISTRESS button, the pop-up window color is green to indicate that the LT-4200S GMDSS system is in test mode and therefore the RCCs will not be involved.

Change of Hardware and Software

The LT-4200S GMDSS system will initially be configured, verified, and activated by guidance of the Installation Wizard, as described and illustrated in *Installation Wizard* on page 63. Hereafter, if system units are replaced or the LT-4200S GMDSS system is updated with new software, the Service Wizard will detect this and help the user with the configuration, verification, and re-activation. The Service Wizard is described and illustrated in *Service Wizard on page 78*.

Change of Hardware				
Hardware	Procedure	Comments		
LT-4210S Control Unit	The LT-4210S CU can be replaced by swopping	All user data (contacts, call		
	the hardware and running the Installation	history and MSI) will be lost,		
	Wizard. Remember the GMDSS SIM card from	since the LT-4210S CU is the		
	the 'old' LT-4210S CU.	'master' of the system.		
LT-3120 Handset	Change hardware.	Test the new hardware.		
LT-3121 Cradle				
LT-4230 Antenna Unit	The LT-4230 AU can be replaced with a new			
	LT-4230 AU, but the Iridium GMDSS Service			
	Provider must be involved. The IMEI number			
	of the new LT-4230 AU must be updated on			
	the GMDSS provisioning before the new LT-			
	4230 AU is connected to the LT-4210S CU and			
	the system is powered up. The Service Wizard			
	will detect the new LT-4230 AU and help the			
	user with the configuration, verification, and			
	re-activation on the Iridium GMDSS System			
	(IGS). AU should show up in System -> System			
	Info -> Unit Info			
LT-3140S Interface Unit	Remove DC input power and connect LT-	Activate the GMDSS Test		
LT-3150S Alarm Panel	3140S IU and peripherals. The units will	Wizard 'Terminal Test' from		
LT-3160S Printer	automatically be detected and added. All units	the GMDSS submenu to test		
Adapter	will be showed in the MENU layout (MENU ->	the added units.		
	System -> System Info -> Unit Info).			
Certus GMDSS SIM Card	The Certus GMDSS SIM card can be replaced	Only a Certus GMDSS SIM		
	with a new Certus GMDSS SIM card, but the	card can be used in the LT-		
	Iridium GMDSS Service Provider must be	4200S GMDSS system.		
	involved. The ICCID number of the new Certus			
	GMDSS SIM card must be updated on the			
	GMDSS provisioning before the new Certus			
	GMDSS SIM card is inserted in the LT-4210S			
	CU and the system is powered up. The Service			
	Wizard will detect the new GMDSS SIM card			
	and help the user with the configuration,			
	verification, and re-activation on the Iridium			
	GMDSS System (IGS).			

Table 26: Change of Hardware in the LT-4200S GMDSS system

Change of Hardware

This section will provide some guidance on replacing system units and what the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system should be aware of, see Table 26.

Always remove the DC input power to the LT-4200S GMDSS system when changing the hardware and system units. When changes hardware the responsible technician shall always verify the installation using the GMDSS Test wizard found in: MENU -> GMDSS -> Terminal Test.

NOTE:	Changing the LT-4230 Antenna Unit or the GMDSS SIM card requires involving of the Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) and GMDSS provisioning. For details of the Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP), see <i>Activating the System</i> on page 60.
NOTE:	If moving a LT-4200S GMDSS system from one vessel to another vessel, then make sure to change all vessel and safety contact details in the GMDSS provisioning, i.e. in the Iridium Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF). The MSSAF form is described in <i>Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF)</i> on page 61.
NOTE:	It is currently not possible to remove units from the system by unplugging and power cycling. A factory reset is required, followed by re-running the Installation Wizard.
NOTE:	Successfully adding LT-3150S Alarm Panel(s) will result in Alarm Panel buttons being backlit. Pressing the MUTE button results in a key beep.
NOTE:	Addition of only the LT-3160S Printer Adapter cannot be verified by the user. A printer is required for verification.

Software update

The LT-4200S GMDSS system must be software updated by using the web server, configuration - software update, see *Software update* on page 229. Accessing the web server is described in *Accessing the built-in web server* on page 191. The software update procedure will automatically update all system units connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit. The Lars Thrane Image (LTI-file) e.g. LT-4200S-v1.00R-0007.Iti will include all software components to all system units. All system units connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit will be upgraded or downgraded to be aligned with the LT-4210S Control Unit, which is the 'master' of the system. As soon as the software update procedure is started, the LT-4210S Control Unit window will indicate 'Software update in progress' as illustrated in Figure 106.



Figure 106: Software update

Once, the LT-4200S GMDSS system has finalized the software update, the system will reboot and startup showing the Service Wizard, as illustrated in Figure 107 on page 78. To finalize the software update, complete the Service Wizard.

NOTE: Please check the Lars Thrane A/S company website for the newest available software for the LT-4200S GMDSS system.

Service Wizard

The Service Wizard is a guidance tool to help the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system to help complete hardware changes or software updates. The Service Wizard is very similar to the Installation Wizard, which is described in *Installation Wizard* on page 63. The Service Wizard is activated as defined in Table 27.

Service Wizard				
System change	Activated	Comments		
New software	Yes			
New LT-4230 AU	Yes	IMEI must be changed for the		
		GMDSS provisioning.		
New GMDSS SIM card	Yes	ICCID must be changed for the		
		GMDSS provisioning.		

Table 27: Service Wizard

NOTE: The difference between the Installation and Service Wizard is illustrated in Table 25 on page 63. The Service Wizard is activated when system changes are made to the LT-4200S GMDSS system, where it is needed to check for a new GMDSS configuration file and reactivate the system on the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS).

Figure 107 is illustrating the activation of the Service Wizard due to a software update of the LT-4200S GMDSS system. Press the soft key 'Next' to start the Service Wizard. Figure 108 is illustrating the last window for completing the Service Wizard. Additional steps are illustrated in *Installation Wizard* on page 63.







Figure 108: Service Wizard (completed)

GMDSS Services

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports both GMDSS services, as well as non-GMDSS services. The GMDSS services supported by the LT-4200S GMDSS system are listed here:

- Distress Alert & Distress Call
- Distress Alert Relay
- Maritime Safety Information (MSI)
- Safety Calling
- Safety Messaging

The above listed GMDSS services are all described in further detail in this section. The non-GMDSS services are described in *Non-GMDSS System* **Services** on page 135.

Service	Direction	Priority			
		Distress	Urgency	Safety	Routine
Distress Alert	MO	Х	-	-	-
MSI (Incl. Distress Alert Relay)	MT	Х	Х	Х	-
Safety Calling	MO, MT	Х	Х	Х	-
Safety Messaging	MO, MT	Х	Х	Х	-
General Calling (Voice Call)	MO, MT	-	-	-	Х

Table 28: LT-4200S GMDSS System Services and Priorities

IMPORTANT: A mobile originated (MO) Safety Call of Distress priority can only be initiated, if Distress is activated by using the DISTRESS button. This also applies to Safety Messaging.

The LT-4200S GMDSS and Non-GMDSS Services are listed in Table 28. For all the services, the supported priorities are shown (Distress, Urgency, Safety, and Routine). The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports priority and preemption for Mobile Originated (MO) and Mobile Terminated (MT) services.

UTC: 2020-12-01 15:02 POSN: 55°49.151N 012°29.292E	الدى
Call ended - Pre-empted	
004529401008	

Figure 109: Voice Call (preempted)

If a service with higher priority is required, the service with lower priority will be preempted automatically by the LT-4200S GMDSS system or by the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS). An example of a voice call being preempted by the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) is illustrated above in Figure 109.

Distress Alert & Distress Call

The Distress can be activated using the DISTRESS button on the LT-4210S Control Unit or from the DISTRESS button on the LT-3150S Alarm Panel. The LT-3150S Alarm Panel shall be connected via the LT-3140S Interface Unit, up to 3 external LT-3150S Alarm Panels can be connected to the system.

DISTRESS button





Figure 110: LT-4210S Control Unit (DISTRESS button)

Figure 111: LT-3150S Alarm Panel (DISTRESS button)

The procedure for activating the Distress is the same for all DISTRESS buttons:

- 1. Lift the red lid marked DISTRESS
- Press and hold the red DISTRESS button for a minimum 3 seconds (a distress tone will be played immediately when pushing the DISTRESS button)
- 3. The Distress will be activated in the LT-4200S GMDSS system after 3 seconds indicated by distress tone stopping
- 4. Hereafter you can release the DISTRESS button (the light in the red button is now on maximum intensity)
- **IMPORTANT:** After activating Distress from an external LT-3150S Alarm Panel, it is recommended to check the status of the Distress by verifying the display information on the LT-4210S Control Unit, where Distress delivery status will be presented (e.g. Distress Alert Status = Sending, Sent, Delivered, and Acknowledged).

The Distress will preempt any other service (voice or data), if needed. In most voice cases this will not be necessary as only the Control Unit can use Line 1, which is designated for Safety Calling.

IMPORTANT: By default, the LT-4200S GMDSS system is configured to complete a Distress Alert message followed by a Distress Call to a Rescue Coordination Center (RCC) after the DISTRESS button has been activated. A configuration of the LT-4200S GMDSS system is available, where the system will not automatically make the Distress Call to the RCC, when the DISTRESS button has been activated. If the LT-4200S GMDSS system has been configured not to automatically call the RCC, then this Distress Call can manually be initiated from a soft key after the Distress Alert has been delivered.

This section will illustrate and explain how to activate a Distress from the LT-4210S Control Unit. After the Distess has been activated (pushing the DISTRESS button for more than 3 seconds) status information will be available, i.e. providing Distress Alert Status delivery information.

The following Distress activities will be illustrated in this section:

- Activation of Distress (Distress Alert & Distress Call) Distress Settings, Auto-dial = Enabled
- Select Nature of Distress
- Canceling Distress
- IMPORTANT: It is possible to activate Distress from either the LT-4210S Control Unit or from the LT-3150S Alarm Panel (if any external LT-3150S Alarm Panels are part of the system configuration). The LT-4210S Control Unit is providing detailed information about the Distress Alert and Distress Call status and therefore it is recommended to check this unit after activation of Distress. Only from the LT-4210S Control Unit you will be able to get in contact with the Rescue Coordination Center (RCC) via the LT-3120 Handset.

Activation of Distress (Distress Alert & Distress Call)



Figure 113: Activating Distress (2 of 9)

NOTE: In this example a test RCC has been used to illustrate the Distress (East_TEST_RCC).

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:54 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29.290E	.al
Distress A	ctivated
Distress Alert Status	Sending
Call Status	Call pending
Nature of Distress	Undesignated distress
RCC Name	East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country	Iridium
Cancel Call Select N	lature Cancel Distress

Distress Alert Status = Sending.

Figure 114: Activating Distress (3 of 9)

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:54 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29.290E	lu.
Distress A	ctivated
Distress Alert Status	Sent
Call Status	Call pending
Nature of Distress	Undesignated distress
RCC Name	East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country	Iridium
Cancel Call Select N	Nature Cancel Distress

Figure 115: Activating Distress (4 of 9)

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:54 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°	L 29.290E	.atl
Dist	ress Activa	ited
Distress Alert Sta	atus	Delivered
Call Status		Call pending
Nature of Distres	ss Unde	signated distress
RCC Name		East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country		Iridium
Cancel Call	Select Nature	Cancel Distress

Figure 116: Activating Distress (5 of 9)

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:55 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29.291E	🧏 📞il
Distress A	Activated
Distress Alert Status	Delivered
Call Status	Connecting
Nature of Distress	Undesignated distress
RCC Name	East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country	Iridium
Select	Nature Cancel Distress

Call Status = Connecting (if Auto-dial = Enabled, then a Distress Call will automatically be established to a RCC).

Figure 117: Activating Distress (6 of 9)

Distress Alert Status = Sent.

Distress Alert Status = Delivered (Iridium GMDSS System has received the Distress Alert message).

UTC: 2020-11-27 08 28 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29.291E	🧏 📞I
Distress A	ctivated
Distress Alert Status	Delivered
Call Status	Call active
Nature of Distress	Undesignated distress
RCC Name	East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country	Iridium
Select	Nature Cancel Distress

Call Status = Call active (Distress Call has now been establish to the RCC).

Call Status = Ready (Distress Call has been disconnected to the RCC). Use soft key 'Call RCC' to activate a new Distress Call.

Figure 118: Activating Distress (7 of 9)

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:55 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29.291E	ltı.
Distress A	ctivated
Distress Alert Status	Delivered
Call Status	Ready
Nature of Distress	Undesignated distress
RCC Name	East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country	Iridium
Call RCC Select N	ature Cancel Distress

Figure 119: Activating Distress (8 of 9)

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:55 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29.291E	.atl
Distress A	ctivated
Distress Alert Status Call Status Nature of Distress RCC Name RCC Country	Acknowledged Ready Undesignated distress East_TEST_RCC Iridium
Call RCC Select N	ature Cancel Distress

Distress Alert Status = Acknowledged (Distress Alert message has manually been ackknowledge by the RCC).

Figure 120: Activating Distress (9 of 9)

IMPORTANT:After the Distress Alert message has been acknowledged by the Iridium GMDSS
System (IGS), the system will automatically make a Distress Call to the configured
RCC, if the "auto-dial" setting is enabled.

A Distress Call can be established to the RCC any time after the Distress Alert message has been acknowledged by the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS). If the "auto-dial" setting is enabled, a Distress Call is automatically established after acknowledgement has been received ("Delivered). To manually activate a Distress Call, press the soft key 'Call RCC' and lift the handset out of the cradle when the call is connected.

Select Nature of Distress

UT	C: 2021-04-26 13:55		J.
PC	Select Nature of Distress		
	Undesignated distress		
D	Fire, explosion		d
С	Flooding		ly
Ν	Collision		ss
R	Grounding		С
R	anan ay an an		m
_	Select	Cancel	_

Use the soft key 'Select Nature' to send Nature of Distress information to the RCC.

Figure 121: Select Nature of Distress (1 of 4)

UTC:	2021-04-26 13:55		-al-
РС	Select Nature of Distress	5	
	Undesignated distress		
D	Fire, explosion		d
C	Flooding		Jy
Ν	Collision		ŝS
R	Grounding		C
R	and the second		m
	Select	Cancel	_

Use the Navigation key (arrow up/down) to select the Nature of Distress and select.

Figure 122: Select Nature of Distress (2 of 4)

UTC: 2021-04-26 13: POSN: 55°49.152N 012	56 2°29.292E	.atl
Dis	tress Activa	ited
Distress Alert S	atus	Acknowledged
Call Status		Ready
Nature of Distre	ess	Updating
RCC Name		East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country		Iridium
Call RCC	Update Nature	Cancel Distress

An updated Distress Alert message will now be sent to the RCC with the Nature of Distress information (e.g. Fire, explosion).

Figure 123: Select Nature of Distress (3 of 4)

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:5 POSN: 55°49.151N 012	6 °29.292E	llı.
Dis	tress Activa	ted
Distress Alert St	atus	Acknowledged
Call Status		Ready
Nature of Distre	SS	Fire, explosion
RCC Name		East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country		Iridium
Call RCC	Update Nature	Cancel Distress

Updating will change to the selected Nature of Distress once the update has been received by the RCC.

Figure 124: Select Nature of Distress (4 of 4)

NOTE: The Nature of Distress can be selected before (MENU -> GMDSS -> Distress Settings: Nature of Distress) or after (soft key 'Select Nature' or 'Update Nature') activation of the Distress.

Cancelling Distress

To cancel a Distress, press the soft key 'Cancel Distress' and confirm the decision. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will notify the RCC that the Distress has been cancelled.

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:56 POSN: 55°49.151N 012°29.292E					
	Cancel Distress				
Distress A Call Statu Nature of RCC Nam	Do you wish to cancel the distress and notify the RCC?	owledged Ready explosion FEST_RCC			
RCC Cour	htry	Iridium			
Yes	5	No			

Figure 125: Cancelling Distress (1 of 3)

UTC: 2021-04-26 13:56 POSN: 55°49.151N 012°29.292E	.atl
Distress Ca	ncelled
Distress Alert Status	Cancelled
Call Status	Ready
Nature of Distress	Fire, explosion
RCC Name	East_TEST_RCC
RCC Country	Iridium

To cancel a Distress, use the soft key 'Cancel Distress' and confirm.

A Distress Alert message indicating Cancelled will be sent to the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) and the RCC.

The LT-4200S GMDSS

operation.

system will now be back to the default window and

Figure 126: Cancelling Distress (2 of 3)



Figure 127: Cancelling Distress (3 of 3)

Distress Alert Relay

This section is illustrating the LT-4200S GMDSS system behavior when a Distress Alert Relay message is received from a Rescue Coordination Center (RCC). A Distress Alert Relay message is sent by an RCC to a predefined area (e.g. a circular area of radius 100 NM) when another vessel nearby has sent a Distress Alert message and assistance is required. The Distress Alert Relay message will contain information from the vessel in Distress. The Distress Alert Relay message will be available in the MSI (inbox). By pushing the soft key 'MSI(X)' the operator of the system will be directed to the MSI (inbox) for reading the incoming message. The following figures, Figure 128 to Figure 134, are illustrating the reception of a Distress Alert Relay message, sent from an RCC.



Figure 128: Distress Alert Relay (1 of 7)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:18 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29	• .289E	Σ	II. E
**•		m [®]	
LT-42	00S GMDSS S	ystem	
Safety Call	MSI (1)	Safety	Message
2		-	2

Figure 129: Distress Alert Relay (2 of 7)

riguic	125. Distres	is Alert Heldy	(20)7)	
UTC: 2024-09-11 POSN: 55°49.154N	07:18 012°29.289E	•	\bowtie	lu.
Count: 1	BAM	Alerts	Page	1/1
Distress F Incoming d	₹x istress. Chec	k GMDSS disp	lay	
	Re	view	Silence A	All

Figure 130: Distress Alert Relay (3 of 7)

The LT-4200S GMDSS System has received a new MSI message with priority of Urgency or Distress. The audible alarm can be muted by pressing 'Mute'

By pressing 'Mute' the system returns to the default screen. The BAM alert symbol and MSI(1) indicates that the priority message has not yet been read.

Long press on the MENU button, will direct the user to the BAM alerts list. If not already muted, the BAM alert can be muted by pressing the soft key 'Silence All'. Additional BAM alerts with audible alarms require another press of 'Silence All'

UTC: 2021-02-05 POSN: 55°49.152N	09:41 012°29.292E 🗡	\bowtie	I I
Count: 1	BAM Alerts	Page	1/1
Distress R Incoming di	እ stress. Check GMDSS display		
	Review		

Figure 131: Distress Alert Relay (4 of 7)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:18 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29	.289E 📕	ار. 🖂
•*.	: · iridium®	
LT-42	00S GMDSS Systen	n
Safety Call	MSI (1) S	afety Message

Figure 132: Distress Alert Relay (5 of 7)

UTC: 2024-09-11 POSN: 55°49.154N	07:19 012°29	9.289E 🌿		\bowtie	llı.
No. 0087		MSI - Ac	tive	C	09:34
Priority	Class	Агеа	Cancel By		
🗹 DISTRESS	SAR	CIRC	2024-09-1	1 08:03	
SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-09-2	0 20:00	
SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-1	1 08:25	
SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-09-1	6 04:59	
SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-09-1	3 09:59	
Details	:	Show Un	read		

Figure 133: Distress Alert Relay (6 of 7)

to the specific MSI or Safety Message responsible for the BAM Alert. This can also be done from the default screen.

'Review' will direct the user

Pressing the soft key

To go back to the default window press the 'Menu' button. By pressing the soft key 'MSI (1)' the user will be directed to the MSI window (1 unread MSI message).

The MSI message is a Distress Alert Relay message, Class SAR (Search and Rescue). The MSI message can be read by pressing the soft key 'Details'.

UTC: 2024-09-11 POSN: 55°49.154N	07:19 012°29.290E	lh.
	MSI Message	
TYPE : PRIORITY : CREATED : RECEIVED : CANCEL BY : TARGET AREA : ADVISORY ID : BODY LENGTH :	MSI MESSAGE 87 BEGIN DISTRESS ALERT RELAY DISTRESS 2024-09-11 07:03 UTC 2024-09-11 07:18 UTC 2024-09-11 08:03 UTC CIRCULAR 66E14437_E211 33 CHARACTERS -VESSEL IN DISTRESS	

Figure 134: Distress Alert Relay (7 of 7)

The Distress Alert Relay message has some attribute information listed in the beginning. Use the Navigation key to scroll down and read the body of the message. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will generate visual and audio notifications, when a Distress Alert Relay message is received. The Distress Relay message will generate a BAM warning, which can be viewed by long press the MENU button for more > 1 s. As illustrated in Figure 130 and Figure 131, the BAM warning can be muted either via the soft key 'Mute' or via the soft key 'Silence All'. By pressing the soft key 'Review', you will be directed to the MSI Messages. The BAM warning cannot be acknowledged, and the visual and audio notification will only disappear, when the Distress Alert Relay message has been read in the MSI Messages.

A Distress Alert Relay message received by the LT-4200S GMDSS system is illustrated in Figure 135.

	- MSI MESSAGE 53 BEGIN				
TYPE	: DISTRESS ALERT RELAY				
PRIORITY	: DISTRESS				
CREATED	: 2020-11-27 09:52 UTC				
RECEIVED	: 2020-11-27 09:52 UTC				
CANCEL BY	: 2020-12-27 09:52 UTC				
TARGET AREA	: CIRCULAR				
ADVISORY ID	: 5FCOCC3B_643F				
BODY LENGTH	: 443 Characters				
VESSEL IN	DISTRESS				
DISTRESS	: ACTIVE				
POSN	: 55-45.634N 012-36.213E				
TIME OF POSN	: 2020-11-27 09:49 UTC				
MMSI	: 219022390				
NAME	: ARIZONA				
MESSAG	GE BODY				
DISTRESS ALERT	: IRIDIUM				
DISTRESS MESS	AGE RECEIVED VIA IRIDIUM				
VESSEL MMSI: 2	219022390				
VESSEL NAME:	Arizona				
SES: SES1					
DEVICE MSISDN	: 881641700113				
DISTRESS TYPE:	undesignated distress				
MESSAGE DATE:	2020-11-27				
MESSAGE TIME:	09:49 UTC				
MESSAGE TYPE:	NEW				
LATITUDE: 55.7	6057N				
LONGITUDE: 12	.60355E				
POSITION RECO	RDED: 2020-11-27 09:49 UTC				
POSITION TYPE:	AUTOMATIC				
POSITION UPDATED LAST 24 HRS: YES					
HEADING: 12					
SPEED: 0.0 KTS					
RECEIVING GATE	EWAY: ARIZONA				
<optional in<="" td="" text=""><td>nserted by the RCC></td></optional>	nserted by the RCC>				
	MSI MESSAGE 53 END				

Figure 135: Distress Alert Relay (example)

IMPORTANT: A Distress Alert Relay message contains vital information about the vessel in Distress: Name, MMSI, Position, Nature of Distress, and MSISDN (if the Distress Alert message is initiated from an Iridium terminal). An example of a Distress Alert Relay message is illustrated in Figure 135. If your vessel is not being contacted directly by an RCC, after you have received a Distress Alert Relay message, then get back to the RCC and offer your assistance.

Maritime Safety Information (MSI)

Maritime Safety Information (MSI) is information sent by different maritime authorities to radio and satellite equipment on-board SOLAS vessels. The information can vary from weather forecast, navigation relevant information, reception of Distress Alert Relay, to SAR coordination information. The different maritime authorities providing the MSI messages are listed here:

- NAVAREA Coordinator (MSI Provider)
- METAREA Coordinator (MSI Provider)
- Rescue Coordination Center (SAR)

and further details describing the different MSI messages are showed in Table 29.

Maritime Safety Information (MSI) Supported by the IGS				
Message Type Class Authority Geography Priv				
Navigational warning or bulletin	NAV	MSI Provider	Rectangular	Safety
			Circular	Urgency
			NAVAREA	
			COASTAL	
Meteorological warning or forecast	MET	MSI Provider	Rectangular	Safety
			Circular	Urgency
			METAREA	
			COASTAL	
Urgency & Safety Traffic	NAV	MSI Provider	NAVAREA	Safety
	SAR	RCC		Urgency
Shore to Ship Distress Alert Relay	SAR	RCC	Rectangular	Distress
			Circular	
SAR Coordination Traffic	SAR	RCC	Rectangular	Safety
			Circular	Urgency
				Distress
Piracy Situation Report	NAV	MSI Provider	Rectangular	Safety
	(Piracy)		Circular	
			NAVAREA	
			COASTAL	
Piracy Attack Warning	NAV	MSI Provider	Rectangular	Urgency
	(Piracy)		Circular	
			NAVAREA	
			COASTAL	

 Table 29: Maritime Safety Information (MSI) supported by the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS)

NOTE: MSI messages can be received with the priorities: Distress, Urgency, or Safety. MSI message with priority: Distress, will be scheduled with immediately delivery. MSI messages with priority: Urgency, will be scheduled with immediate or scheduled delivery. MSI messages with priority: Safety, will be scheduled with scheduled delivery. Scheduled delivery is configured between two and four times a day, depending on the NAVAREA / METAREA. The scheduled delivery time is available in the MSI schedule and illustrated in Figure 137 on page 91. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will always receive MSI messages from the current NAVAREA / METAREA and Coastal Warning Area, in which the LT-4200S GMDSS system is located. It is possible to configure the system, e.g. to receive MSI messages from other NAVAREA / METAREA and Coastal Warning Areas. MSI Settings are described in *MSI Settings* on page 109.

The figures, Figure 136 to Figure 139, illustrates how to read an MSI message. In this example the MSI message is a Navigational warning or forecast, sent from NAVAREA 1 (United Kingdom) with priority: Safety. The MSI message has been sent with scheduled delivery and received by the LT-4200S GMDSS system 2020-11-30 09:53 (UTC), see Figure 138 on page 92.

UTC: 2024-09-12 06:20 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29	9.288E	ll. 🖂
• •。	: iridiur	n° red
LT-42	00S GMDSS Sy	stem
Safety Call	MSI (1)	Safety Message

Figure 136: MSI Message (1 of 4)

UTC: 2024-09-12 POSN: 55°49.154N	06:21 012°29	.289E !		\bowtie	llı.
No. 0174		MSI - Ac	tive	3	09:34
Priority	Class	Area	Cancel By		
🖾 SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-1	2 08:25	
SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-09-2	0 20:00	
SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-09-1	6 04:59	
SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-09-1	3 09:59	
SAFETY	NAV	4	2024-10-1	4 18:44	
Details		Show Un	read		

Figure 137: MSI Message (2 of 4)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system default window. When unread MSI messages are available, the soft key 'MSI' will change to 'MSI (X)', where X is the number of unread messages.

The MSI window will show Priority, Class, Area, and time of cancellation for the MSI messages. Read the MSI message by pressing soft 'Details'.

NOTE: If there are any unread MSI messages available in the LT-4200S GMDSS system, then soft key 'MSI' will be changed to 'MSI(X)', where X is the number of unread MSI messages. Depending on the priority of the unread MSI messages available, BAM will generate an active caution or active - unacknowledged warning. By pressing the 'MSI' softkey the user will enter the MSI list, where the MSI Messages are listed in order of reception. When receiving multiple MSI messages of Safety priority, the terminal will only emit one audible notification.

IMPORTANT: All MSI messages received by the LT-4200S GMDSS system must be read as soon as practically possible. It is not acceptable to have unread MSI messages available in the system.

MSI messages can contain up to 15 KB. Figure 138 illustrates that the size of this Navigational MSI message is of 2202 Bytes. Standard characters use 1 Byte, where special characters uses > 1 Byte.

MSI Message TYPE MSI MESSAGE 174 BEGIN TYPE METEOROLOGICAL WARNING OR FORECAST PRIORITY SAFETY CREATED 2024-09-11 20:25 UTC RECEIVED 2024-09-11 21:35 UTC CANCEL BY 2024-09-12 08:25 UTC TARGET AREA METAREA 1 ADVISORY ID 66E1FCA6_E3FB DODU 1 FUNCTURE ACCO CUMPACTERS	UTC: 2024-09-12 06:21 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.289E	I
MSI MESSAGE 174 BEGINTYPE:METEOROLOGICAL WARNING OR FORECASTPRIORITY:SAFETYCREATED:2024-09-1120:25UTCRECEIVED:2024-09-1208:25UTCCARGET AREA :METAREA 1ADVISORY ID :66E1FCA6_E3FBDODULTERETCANCEL ENCTCARGET AREA :CARGET CAREACARGET CAREA :CARGET CAREA :CAREA :<	MSI Message	
Print	MSI MESSAGE 174 BEGIN TYPE : METEOROLOGICAL WARNING OR FORECAST PRIORITY : SAFETY CREATED : 2024-09-11 20:25 UTC RECEIVED : 2024-09-11 21:35 UTC CANCEL BY : 2024-09-12 08:25 UTC TARGET AREA : METAREA 1 ADVISORY ID : 66E1FCA6_E3FB PRIOR	

Figure 138: MSI Message (3 of 4)

The MSI message has some attribute information listed in the beginning. Use the Navigation key to scroll down and read the body of message.

TC: 2024-09-12 06:22 OSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E	
MSI Message	
ECURITE	
IGH SEAS BULLETIN FOR METAREA 1 SSUED AT 2000 UTC ON WEDNESDAY 11 SEPTEMBER 2024 Y THE MET OFFICE, EXETER, UNITED KINGDOM OR THE PERIOD 2000 UTC ON WEDNESDAY 11 SEPTEMBER NTIL 2000 UTC ON THURSDAY 12 SEPTEMBER 2024	
רייאטור ט	

Body of the MSI message. Scroll down to read the entire MSI message.

Figure 139: MSI Message (4 of 4)

If the MSI message obtains more space than a window, then a scroll bar will be available in the right side of the MSI message window, as shown on the figures above.

NOTE: It is also possible to read MSI messages via the Web Server. See *Authentication* on page 196.

Mute of MSI messages

A dialog box is shown in the display upon reception of an MSI message with priority Urgency or Distress, this is illustrated in Figure 140. Upon pressing the soft key 'Mute', the accompanying loud and continuous audible signal is muted.



Figure 140: MSI Message (illustration of 'Mute')

Coastal Warning / Subject Indicators

MSI messages (type: Coastal Warnings), will be related to a specific Coastal Warning Area (A - Z), e.g. 10-A, where A is the Coastal Warning Area, belonging to NAVAREA 10. One or more Coastal Warning Areas can be configured in the MSI Settings, Coastal Warning Areas. The Coastal Warnings will provide information, which is subcategories in Subject Indicators (SI). The Subject Indicators are listed in Table 30. The configuration of the Subject Indicators is described in *MSI Settings* starting on page 109, under Coastal Warning Services. The Subject Indicators are also referred as Coastal Warning Services. Be aware, that some of the Subject Indicators can be configured, others are mandatory.

SI SI	Description	SI SI	Description
31	Description	51	Description
А	Navigational warnings	Н	LORAN messages
В	Meteorological warnings	I	Not used
С	Ice Reports	J	SATNAV messages
D	Search and rescue information,	К	Other electronic navaid messages
	and acts of piracy warnings		
E	Meteorological forecast	L	Other navigational warnings
F	Pilot service messages	V, W, X, Y	Special service allocation by the
			International SafetyNET panel
G	AIS	Z	No messages on hand

 Table 30: MSI Messages (coastal warning / subject indicators (SI))

NOTE: By default, the LT-4200S GMDSS system will only receive Coastal Warnings from the Coastal Warning Area, in which the system is located, and only mandatory Subject Indicators are received. If the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system would like to receive Coastal Warnings from additional Coastal Warning Areas, including non-mandatory Subject Indicators, then configuration in MSI Settings is required.

Safety Calling

Safety Calling is a GMDSS voice service supported between the LT-4200S GMDSS system and the Rescue Coordination Center (RCC). Safety Calling is not supported between two LT-4200S GMDSS systems. Safety Calling can be originated in both directions: 1) Mobile Originated (to RCC) and 2) Mobile Terminated (from RCC). Safety Calling is supported with priority: Distress, Urgency, and Safety.

IMPORTANT: Safety Calling (priority: Distress, also mentioned as Distress Call) can only be activated, if Distress has been activated by using the DISTRESS button. The section will focus on Safety Calling (priority: Urgency or Safety). Distress Call is described in *Distress Alert & Distress Call* on page 80.

Mobile Originated (to RCC)

A Safety Call to an RCC can be activated in two ways:

- 1) Using soft key 'Safety Call' (available on the default window)
- 2) Navigate to the RCC Contacts (MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Contacts)
- NOTE: It is possible to make a Safety Call to all RCCs supported by Iridium. Using the soft key 'Safety Call' on the default window, will initiate a Safety Call to the RCC configured in Distress Settings, Distress RCC. If the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system navigates to MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Contacts, then all RCCs supported by Iridium can be chosen. Safety Contacts is described in *Safety Contacts* on page 105.

The following figures, Figure 141 to Figure 144, illustrates how the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system initiates a Safety Call (priority: Urgency) to an RCC configured in Distress Settings, Distress RCC (Automatic or Manual mode).



default window. A Safety Call can be initiated by using the soft key 'Safety Call'.

LT-4210S Control Unit,

Figure 141: Safety Call to RCC (1 of 4)

Select priority: Urgency or

Safety by using the Navigation key (arrows). Hereafter use the soft key

'Select'.

UTC: 2024-09 POSN: 55°49.1	9-11 07:29 53N 012°29.289E	ath
	Select Priority	
	Urgency	
	Safety	
Sele	ct	Cancel

Figure 142: Safety Call to RCC (2 of 4)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:29 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	×	S I	
Dialing RccLT Priority: Urg	ency		The Safety Call is dialing to the RCC (in this example East_TEST_RCC).
Figure 143: Safety Call to	RCC (3 of	4)	

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:29 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	×	S I	
Duration: 00:03 RccLT Priority: Urger	су		The Safety Call is connected (duration counter will start to o when the RCC has be connected).

ounter will start to count hen the RCC has been onnected).

During a Safety Call, the RCC name and the priority of the call, are both presented in the call window. As soon as the Safety Call is connected to the RCC, the duration counter will start to count in the call window. The handset must be off hooked to unmute the handset microphone. In Figure 144 above, the handset microphone mute symbol is illustrated, since the handset is placed in the cradle (on hooked).

NOTE: A Safety Call will always show the RCC name and priority in the call window. In Figure 144 above, the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system has initiated a Safety Call to RCC RccLT (priority: Urgency). The Safety Call has been established to the RCC (duration counter has started).
Mobile Terminated (from RCC)

A Safety Call from an RCC can be received with priority: Distress, Urgency, or Safety. The incoming Safety Call will show the RCC name and priority. The following figures, Figure 145 to Figure 146, illustrates the reception of an mobile terminated Safety Call from RCC (RccLT), with priority: Urgency. The Safety Call can be connected by lifting the handset out of the cradle or by pressing the off-hook button on the front of the control unit.

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:29 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	
Incoming call	An incoming Safety Call (priority: Urgency)
Priority: Urgency	is calling the system. The RCC name will be displayed.
Figure 145: Safety Call from RCC (1 of 2)	
UTC: 2024-09-11 07:29 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	
Duration: 00:03	The Safety Call has
RccLT	been answered by lifting the handset out
Priority: Urgency	of the cradle.

Figure 146: Safety Call from RCC (2 of 2)

NOTE: When receiving a Safety Voice call from an RCC, the priority of the incoming call is shown in the call window together with the name of the RCC. In the example above, RccLT has been used as a test RCC for illustration.

Distress, Urgency, Safety Call Rollover

For Dual GMDSS installations Iridium has implemented a rollover feature. This will forward the incoming priority call from SES1 to SES2 if SES1 is not available. This is only applicable if the GMDSS systems are configured as a Dual GMDSS installation. Note that this is only applicable for incoming Safety Calls. MSI and Safety Messages will be received by both SES1 and SES2. See Table 31 on page 153.

Description	Rollover function	
SES1 Loss of power	Distress Call is routed to SES2	
SES1 does not answer MT Distress Call	Distress Call is routed to SES2	
SES1 is declines MT Distress Call Distress Call is routed to SES2		
Table 31: Distress Alert Rollover		

Note: The GMDSS installer must adhere to local legislations regarding setup and configuration of Dual GMDSS installations.

Two-digit Codes

The LT-4200S GMDSS system support two-digit codes, which is handled as Safety Calling (priority = Safety). The two-digit codes with supported service by the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) are listed in Table 32.

Two-digit Codes			
Service	Short code	Comments	
Medical Advice	32		
Medical Assistance	38		
Maritime Assistance	39		
Report Maritime Dangers	42		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			

Table 32: Two-digit Codes

The Two-digit Codes can be entered directly in the default window. Alternatively, the user can access the Safety Contacts, and select the soft key 'Show Next', where a complete list of Two-digit Codes supported by Iridium are listed (MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Contacts). Figure 147 to Figure 150 illustrates the initiation of 'Medical Advice (32)'.

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:30 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.289E	ltı.	
GMDSS Phone Setting	as System	
MSI Messages		GMDSS submenu
Safety Contacts		Safety Contacts
Safety Messages		
MSI Schedule		
MSI Settings		

Figure 147: Two-digit Codes (1 of 4)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:39 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29	.285E		lı.	
F	RCC Contacts			
Name			Country	
AlamedaTEST		Unit	ed States	
East_TEST_RCC			Iridium	L
NorfolkTEST		Unit	ed States	
RCC Atlantic Are	a	Unit	ed States	
Safety Call	Show Next	Safe	ety Message	2

Press soft key 'Show Next' to access the Two-digit codes.

Figure 148: Two-digit Codes (2 of 4)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:30 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E Maritime Ser	ll
Name	Two-digit Code
Medical Advice	32
Medical Assistance	38
Maritime Assistance	39
Meteorological Data	41
Safety Call Show RCC	Cs

Select the Two-digit code (Maritime Service) and use the soft key 'Safety Call' to initiate the call.

Figure 149: Two-digit Codes (3 of 4)

POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	×	U II. J
Dialing		
Medical Adv	vice	i i
Priority: Safe	ty	

Safety Call (Medical Advice, Two-digit code: 32) being established.

Figure 150: Two-digit Codes (4 of 4)

NOTE: Use the LT-4210S Control Unit off-hook button or the soft key 'Safety Call' when the Twodigit Code has been selected as illustrated in Figure 149.

Safety Messaging

Safety Messaging is a GMDSS message service supported between the LT-4200S GMDSS system and the Rescue Coordination Center (RCC). Safety Messaging is not supported between two LT-4200S GMDSS systems. Safety Messaging can be originated in both directions: 1) Mobile Originated (to RCC) and 2) Mobile Terminated (from RCC). Safety Messaging is supported with priority: Distress, Urgency, and Safety.

Mobile Originated (sending to RCC)

A Safety Message to RCC can be initiated in three ways:

- 1) Using soft key 'Safety Message' (available on the default window)
- 2) Navigate to Safety Contacts (MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Contacts)
- 3) Navigate to Safety Messages (MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Messages)
- NOTE:It is possible to send a Safety Message to all RCCs supported by Iridium. Using the soft key
'Safety Message' on the default window will initiate a Safety Message to the RCC
configured in Distress Settings, Distress RCC. If the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system
navigates to MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Contacts, then all RCCs supported by Iridium can be
selected. Safety Contacts is described in *Safety Contacts* on page 105.

The figures, Figure 151 to Figure 156, illustrates how the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system initiates a Safety Message (priority: Urgency) to an RCC configured in Distress Settings, Distress RCC (Automatic or Manual mode).



Figure 151: Safety Message to RCC (1 of 6)

UTC: 2024-0 POSN: 55°49.1	9-11 07:31 53N 012°29.289E	all
	Select Priority	
	Urgency	
	Safety	
Sele	ct	Cancel

Select priority: Urgency or Safety.

LT-4210S Control Unit, default window. A Safety

Message can be initiated by pressing the soft key

'Safety Message'.

Figure 152: Safety Message to RCC (2 of 6)



Figure 153: Safety Message to RCC (3 of 6)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:33 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	<u>abc</u>	ltı.
New Saf	ety Message	
To: RccLT		URGENCY
Hi RccLT, Our water maker has b Is it possible to have fr helicopter in the next :	oroken down. esh water deli 24 hours.	vered by
Send		Discard

Figure 154: Safety Message to RCC (4 of 6)

UTC: 2024-09 POSN: 55°49.15	-11 07:34 53N 012°29.289E	Il
No. 0013	Sending Message	
RccLT URGENO Alame DISTRES Alame SAFETY	Press 'Mute' to silence the audible signal.	11 07:34 Sending 28 09:24 Received 28 09:23 Received
Mute	2	

Figure 155: Safety Message to RCC (5 of 6)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:34 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.	289E			ıI
No. 0013 Saf	ety Messag	es		
RccLT URGENCY		2024-0	9-11 07:34) Sending	
AlamedaTEST DISTRESS		2024-0	8-28 09:24 Received	
AlamedaTEST SAFETY		2024-0	8-28 09:23 Received	
New	Details		Reply	

Figure 156: Safety Message to RCC (6 of 6)

Write the body text of the Safety Message.

When the body text of the Safety Messages has been completed, then select soft key 'Send' and the Safety Message will be sent.

Sending a Safety Message of Urgency priority generates an audible alert. Press the soft key 'Mute' to mute the audible alert

The sending status of the Safety Messages will change from: Sending to Sent (retry will be possible, if needed). After the safety Message has been written the soft key 'Send' must be applied. The User of the LT-4200S GMDSS system will now see a window with all Safety Messages, with status information about the current transmission state: Sending, Sent or Failed. In Figure 156 on page 101 the Safety Message status is showing 'Sending', which means that the Safety Message has not been sent yet. As soon as the safety message has been sent from the LT-4200S GMDSS system, the status will change to from 'Sending' to 'Sent'. An audible signal is only generated while sending Safety Messages of priority: Urgency or Distress. Distress priority can only be used while a Distress is active.

NOTE: All Safety Messages received in the LT-4200S GMDSS system will be available in the Safety Messages (MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Messages). It is possible to send Safety Messages up to 1000 characters.

Mobile Terminated (received from RCC)

A Safety Message from an RCC can be received with priority: Distress, Urgency, or Safety. An incoming Safety Message will be shown with the soft key Safety 'Msgs (1)' and with a BAM symbol in the status bar. A Safety Message with priority: Safety, will be indicated with the BAM active caution symbol, and Safety Messages with priority: Urgency or Distress will be indicated with the BAM active warning symbol. The figures, Figure 157 to Figure 161, illustrates the reception of an incoming Safety Message from East_TEST_RCC (priority: Urgency).

UTC: 2024-09 POSN: 55°49.1	0-11 07:36 • 54N 012°29.288E	
	Message Received	
SES Nan SES MSI Vessel N Vessel N	Press 'Mute' to silence the audible signal.	SES2 700048 JS T 999800
Vessel IA	40 по.	9999800
Mute	e Sa	fety Msas (1)

Receiving a Safety Message of Urgency or Distress priority generates an audible alert. Press the soft key 'Mute' to mute the audible alert

Figure 157: Safety Message from RCC (1 of 5)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:36 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29	.288E 🔍		ال.
• • •		D	
LT-42	00S GMDSS Syste	em.	
Safety Call	MSI	Safety Msgs	(1)

Upon muting, the LT-4210S Control Unit returns to the default window. The Safety Message can be read by using the soft key 'Safety Msgs (1)'.

Figure 158: Safety Message from RCC (2 of 5)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:36 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29	.288E 🔍		\bowtie	llı.
No. 0014 Sa	fety Messag	jes		
☑ AlamedaTEST URGENCY		2024-0	9 -11 07 Recei	:36 ved
RccLT URGENCY		2024-0	9-11 07 S	: 34 ent
AlamedaTEST DISTRESS		2024-0	8-28 09 Recei	:24 ved
New	Details			

Read the Safety Message by pressing the ENTER button or use the soft key 'Details'.

Figure 159: Safety Message from RCC (3 of 5)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:36 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E	l
Safety Message	
CREATED : 2024-09-11 07:20 UTC RECEIVED : 2024-09-11 07:36 UTC	
MESSAGE ID : 66E144CD_D7D4 MESSAGE BODY To Vessel: Marco Polo	
Find Reply	

Figure 160: Safety Message from RCC (4 of 5)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:36 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.	289E			ıIİ
No. 0014 Sal	fety Messa	ges		
AlamedaTEST URGENCY		2024-0	09-11 07:36 Received	
RccLT URGENCY		2024-0	0 9-11 07:34 Sent	
AlamedaTEST DISTRESS		2024-0	08-28 09:24 Received	
New	Details		Reply	

Figure 161: Safety Message from RCC (5 of 5)

Use the Navigation key (arrow up/down) to read the entire Safety Message.

After the Safety Message has been opened (and read) the unread symbol and BAM alert will be removed.

NOTE:All Safety Messages received in the LT-4200S GMDSS system will be available in the Safety
Messages (MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Messages). It is possible to receive Safety Messages
consisting of up to 1000 characters (equivalent to 1000 letters).

GMDSS Submenu

This section will describe all relevant GMDSS settings and configurations. Some of the GMDSS submenus will only contain information/status about the LT-4200S GMDSS system.

The GMDSS submenus has the following menu path: MENU -> GMDSS



Figure 162: GMDSS submenu

The GMDSS submenu has the following entries:

- MSI Messages (see Maritime Safety Information (MSI) on page 90)
- Safety Contacts
- Safety Messages (see Safety Messaging on page 100)
- MSI Schedule
- MSI Settings
- Distress Settings
- Position Settings
- Printer Settings
- Location Information
- SES Information
- Terminal Test

MSI and Safety Messages are both described in the previous section *GMDSS Services*, and therefore not further described here.

NOTE:The GMDSS submenu contains all relevant GMDSS information and configuration settings
and provides access to all GMDSS Safety Service functions. Safety Call, MSI, and Safety
Message will be available via soft keys from the LT-4210S Control Unit default window.

NOTE: The Printer Settings submenu is only present if a printer adapter is installed.

Safety Contacts

The Safety Contacts contains a list of all RCCs currently supported by the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS). The Safety Contacts has the following menu path: MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Contacts (~RCC Contacts)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:39 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.285E RCC Conta	ll
	Country
East_TEST_RCC	Iridium
NorfolkTEST	United States
RCC Atlantic Area	United States
Safety Call Show Ne	xt Safety Message

Safety Contacts MENU -> GMDSS -> Safety Contacts (~RCC Contacts)

Figure 163: GMDSS submenu (Safety Contacts)

Each of the RCC Contacts (RCCs) available in the list can be contacted via a Safety Call or a Safety Message. When entering the RCC Contacts, all RCCs can be contacted with the following priority: Safety or Urgency (the Test RCC's will not be present on a released system).

NOTE: If the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system would like to get in contact with an RCC that is different from the RCC configured in Distress Settings, Distress RCC (Automatic or Manual mode), then the user of the system must navigate to the RCC Contacts window. E.g. if the LT-4200S GMDSS system is configured to Distress RCC (Automatic mode) and the operator of the system would like to make a Safety Call to an RCC in a different Sea Area. Otherwise, the soft keys 'Safety Call' or 'Safety Message' on the default window of the LT-4210S Control Unit can be used.

Safety Call is described in further details in *Safety Calling* on page 94. Safety Messaging is described in further details in *Safety Messaging* on page 100.

IMPORTANT: The number of RCC supported in the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) and available in the LT-4200S GMDSS system (RCC Contacts) will increase over time. Each and all Sea Areas will always have a responsible RCC covering a specific Sea Area. A new GMDSS configuration file will automatically and occasionally be pushed to the LT-4200S GMDSS system containing an up to date RCC list. The number of RCCs supported in the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) is listed on the Iridium GMDSS website: <u>https://www.iridium.com/gmdss-launch/</u>

MSI Schedule

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports reception of MSI messages. The Maritime Safety Information (MSI) is described in *Maritime Safety Information (MSI)* on page 90. The MSI Schedule is providing an overview to the user about MSI messages: 1) from which NAV-/METAREAs and Coastal Warning Areas (CWA) the LT-4200S GMDSS system is receiving MSI messages from (default and optionally configured) and 2) at what time these MSI messages should be expected. MSI messages with high priority will typically be sent to the LT-4200S GMDSS system with no delay. The MSI Schedule is placed in the GMDSS submenu (MENU -> GMDSS -> MSI Schedule), see Figure 164 and Figure 165.



MSI Schedule: MENU -> GMDSS -> MSI Schedule

Figure 164: GMDSS submenu (MSI Schedule)

UTC: 2024- POSN: 55°49	09-11 07:39 .154N 012°) 29.2861	E		llı.
		MSI	Schedule	3	09:34
Next	Агеа		Up To Date	Upda	ate
09:30	MET	1	Yes	Auto	
17:30	NAV	1	Yes	Auto	

The MSI Schedule will show a list of the NAV-/ METAREAs and Coastal Warning Areas receiving MSI information from.

Figure 165: GMDSS submenu (MSI Schedule)

NOTE: The MSI Schedule illustrated in Figure 165 shows a LT-4200S GMDSS system located in NAV-/METAREA 1 (~United Kingdom I). The entire list of NAV-/METAREAs is shown in Table 34 on page 125. The entire list of Coastal Warning Areas (CWA) is shown in Table 35 on page 126.

The column 'Next' is providing information about the next time when the LT-4200S GMDSS system will receive MSI information from the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS). This time will be offset randomly (up to XX minutes) to handle countless GMDSS terminals. The column 'Update' is indicating Auto, which informs that the MSI retrieve will happen automatically at the time specified.

Manual Update

The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system can use the soft key 'Update' to check and retrieve MSI messages. This is only possible for areas where the Update column displays 'Manual' The manual update function is optional and not required to use at any time. The use of the manual update function is illustrated in Figure 166 and Figure 167.

MSL	Schedule	3	09.34
Mort	Serie date	N N	05.54
Area	Up To Date	Upda	te
MET 1	Yes	Auto	
NAV 1	Yes	Auto	
CWA 4+A	No	Manu	Jal
	MSI S Area MET 1 NAV 1 CWA 4+A	MSI ScheduleAreaUp To DateMET1YesNAV1YesCWA4+ANo	MSI ScheduleCAreaUp To DateUpdaMET1YesAutoNAV1YesAutoCWA 4+ANoManu

Manual 'Update' is available. If pressed the LT-4200S GMDSS system will check for MSI information

Figure 166: GMDSS submenu (MSI Schedule)

UTC: 2024- POSN: 55°49	09-11 07:40 .154N 012°29.287I	E	ltı.
	MSI	Schedule	2 Updating
Next	Area	Up To Date	Update
09:30	MET 1	Yes	Auto
17:30	NAV 1	Yes	Auto
19:00	CWA 4+A	No	Manual

The soft key 'Update' has been used. The LT-4200S GMDSS system is now updating MSI information for the area. Here CWA 10+A

Figure 167: GMDSS submenu (MSI Schedule)

As soon as the manual update button has been activated, the LT-4200S GMDSS system will start retrieving MSI messages from the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS). This is indicated by the updating symbol rotating and data symbol in the status bar. The user is only allowed to use the manual update button once an hour and will be restricted by a pop-up informing the user when the manual update function can be used again.



Figure 168: GMDSS submenu (MSI Schedule)

The Manual MSI Update is only allowed to be used once an hour (and user restricted).

Additional NAV-/METAREA or CWA

If the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system has configured additional NAV-/METAREAs or Coastal Warning Areas (see *MSI Settings* on page 109), then these additional areas will be listed in the MSI Schedule, see Figure 169. The column 'Update' for the additional configured NAV-/METAREAs and Coastal Warning Areas (CWA) will be indicating Manual. The MSI messages from areas indicating Manual will be retrieved automatically at the 'Next' time from the areas indicating Auto. If the 'Update' column indicates Manual, It is possible to use the soft key 'Update' to check for all MSI messages valid for the LT-4200S GMDSS system configuration.

UTC: 2024-09- POSN: 55°49.15	11 07:39 4N 012°) 29.287E			llı.
		MSI So	hedule	3	09:34
Next	Area		Up To Date	Updat	e
09:30	MET	1	Yes	Auto	
17:30	NAV	1	Yes	Auto	
19:00	CWA	4+A	No	Manua	al
				Upda	te

This LT-4200S GMDSS system has been configured with Costal Warning Area A in NAVAREA 4 as an additional to receive MSI information from.

Figure 169: GMDSS submenu (MSI Schedule)

NOTE: All NAV-/METAREAs and Coastal Warning Areas (CWA) from where the LT-4200S GMDSS system periodically will receive MSI messages from (typically NAV and MET MSI providers) will be listed in the MSI Schedule. NAV-/METAREA and Coastal Warning Area (CWA) in which the LT-4200S GMDSS system is in and nearby, will always be shown in the MSI Schedule. For NAV-/METAREAs nearby is defined as 300 NM / for Coastal Warning Areas (CWA) nearby is defined as 100 NM.

MSI Settings

The MSI Settings menu is handling all configuration options related to reception of Maritime Safety Information (MSI).

The MSI Settings window has the following menu path: MENU -> GMDSS -> MSI Settings

The MSI Settings has the following optional configuration items:

- NAVAREA / METAREA
- Coastal Warning Areas
- Coastal Warning Services
- Area By Fixed Position



Figure 170: GMDSS submenu (MSI Settings)

NOTE: The LT-4200S GMDSS system will always receive the mandatory MSI information, which are relevant for the current NAV- / METAREA and Coastal Warning Area, in which the terminal is located and nearby.

NAVAREA / METAREA

The LT-4200S GMDSS system can be configured to receive MSI information from NAVAREA / METAREAs, in which the terminal is not located. The following figures, Figure 171 to Figure 174, illustrates how to add NAVAREA / METAREAs in order to receive MSI information from these areas.

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:54 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.287E NAVAREA / METAREA	
Additional Area 1	None
Additional Area 2	None
Additional Area 3	None
Additional Area 4	None
Edit	

In the NAVAREA / METAREA additional Sea Areas can be added to receive MSI information from (up to 4).

Figure 171: MSI Settings, NAV-/METAREA (1 of 4)

UTC:	2024-09-1	1 07:54					
PC		Sele	ct NAV	/ / MET	Агеа		
	_						
	1	2	3	4	5	б	
а.	7	8	9	10	11	12	
	13	14	15	16	17	18	
	19	20	21				
	Select					Cance	l

Select the NAV / MET Area to be added to the configuration.

Figure 172: MSI Settings, NAV-/METAREA (2 of 4)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:54 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.287 NAVARE	E EA / META	
Additional Area 1		19
Additional Area 2		None
Additional Area 3		None
Additional Area 4		None
	Edit	Clear

NAV-/METAREA 19 (Norway) has been added to the configuration list.

Figure 173: MSI Settings, NAV-/METAREA (3 of 4)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:55 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.287E NAVAREA / METAREA		ائە.
Additional Area 1		19
Additional Area 2		2
Additional Area 3		3
Additional Area 4		4
Edit	Clear	

Up to 4 additional NAV / MET Areas can be added to the configuration list.

Figure 174: MSI Settings, NAV-/METAREA (4 of 4)

NOTE: It is possible to add up to four additional Sea Areas, from which you would like to receive MSI information from. The current Sea Area, in which you are currently located, can be added as one of the four additional Sea Areas. You will always receive MSI information from the Sea Area, in which you are currently located. In order to identify the sea area, in which you are currently located, see *Location Information* on page 124.

Coastal Warning Areas

The LT-4200S GMDSS system can be configured to receive MSI information from Coastal Warning Areas, in which the terminal is not located. The MSI Settings configuration of the Coastal Warning Areas in this section has no impact on the MSI Settings configuration of the NAVAREA / METAREA in the previous section. Both MSI Settings will add geographical areas to the current Sea Area (and maybe Coastal Warning Area), in which the terminal is in and nearby, and will by default receive MSI Information from. The number of Coastal Warning Areas represented in each Sea Area is very different and can vary from 0 to A - Z.

The following figures, Figure 175 to Figure 179, illustrates how to add Coastal Warning Areas in order to receive MSI information from these areas.

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:55 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.287E Coastal Areas	llı.
Additional Areas 1	None
Additional Areas 2	None
Additional Areas 3	None
Additional Areas 4	None
Edit	

Coastal Warning Areas: MENU -> GMDSS -> MSI Settings -> Coastal Warning Areas

Figure 175: MSI Settings, Coastal Warning Areas (1 of 5)

UTC:	2024-09-1	1 07:55					
PC		S	Select N	VAVAR	EA		
	1	2	3	4	5	б	
а.	7	8	9	10	11	12	- 1
	13	14	15	16	17	18	
	19	20	21				
							_
	Select					Cance	l

Select NAVAREA responsible for the Coastal Warning Area/-s to be added to the configuration list.

Figure 176: MSI Settings, Coastal Warning Areas (2 of 5)

UTC: PC	2024-09	-11 07:: Se	ss lect C	oasta	l Area	as (ma	x 5)	
ь.	А	в	с	D	Е	F	G	
а.	н		J	К	L	Μ	Ν	
	0	Ρ	Q	R	S	Т	U	
	\vee	\mathbb{W}	Х	Y	Z			
				Mark		(Cancel	_

Mark Coastal Warning Areas to be added to the configuration list (can individually be marked or not).



UTC:	2024-09	-11 07:5	55					
РС		Se	lect C	oasta	l Area	as (ma	x 5)	
	Α	в	С	D	Е	F	G	
а.	н	1	J	К	L	Μ	Ν	
	0	Ρ	Q	R	S	Т	U	
	\vee	\mathbb{W}	Х	Y	Ζ			
	Apply	/	U	Inmai	rk	(Cancel	

On-going marking of the Costal Warning Areas to be added. Use the soft key 'Apply' when completed.

Figure 178: MSI Settings, Coastal Warning Areas (4 of 5)

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:55 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.287E Coastal Areas	ltı.
Additional Areas 1	10 + ABC
Additional Areas 2	None
Additional Areas 3	None
Additional Areas 4	None
Edit	Clear

Coastal Warning Areas: A, B, and C in NAVAREA 10 has been added to the list of areas, in which the system will now receive MSI information from.

Figure 179: MSI Settings, Coastal Warning Areas (5 of 5)

In the MSI Settings configuration of the Coastal Warning Areas, as illustrated in Figure 179 above, it is only the Coastal Warning Areas: A, B and C (located in NAVAREA 10) which are added to the MSI reception. If the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system would like to receive MSI messages from NAVAREA / METAREA 10, then make sure to add this Sea Area in the MSI Settings as described in NAVAREA / METAREA and as illustrated in Figure 171 on page 109.

NOTE: It is possible to add up to four additional NAVAREA / Coastal Warning Areas (A-Z), in which you would like to receive MSI information from. The current Coastal Warning Area, in which you are currently in, can be added as one of the four additional Coastal Warning Areas (A-Z). You will always receive MSI information from the Coastal Warning Area, in which you are currently in (if located in a Coastal Warning Area). In order to identify the Coastal Warning Area, in which you are a, in which you are currently in (if located in a Coastal Warning Area). In order to identify the Coastal Warning Area, in which you are currently located, see *Location Information* on page 124.

NOTE: It is only possible to configure up to 5 Coastal Warning Areas for a given NAVAREA.

Coastal Warning Services

The Coastal Warning Area in which you are located and the Coastal Warning Areas that you have configured optionally have some mandatory and optionally services. The Coastal Area Services applied will be valid for all Coastal Warning Areas watched. The Coastal Warning Services are illustrated in Figure 180 and the complete list of services are available in Table 33.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:01 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.287E	llı.
Coastal Services	
Navigational Warnings	Enabled
Meteorological Warnings	Enabled
Ice Reports	Disabled
SAR and Piracy Warnings	Enabled
Meteorological Forecasts	Enabled

Coastal Warning Services: MENU -> GMDSS -> MSI Settings -> Coastal Warning Services

Figure 180: MSI Settings, Coastal Warning Services (1 of 2)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:01 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.287E	ltı.
Coastal Services	
Navigational Warnings	Enabled
Meteorological Warnings	Enabled
Ice Reports	Enabled
SAR and Piracy Warnings	Enabled
Meteorological Forecasts	Enabled
Disable	

Enabling of Ice Reports for all Coastal Warning Areas illustrated.

Figure 181: MSI Settings, Coastal Warning Services (2 of 2)

Coastal Warning Services				
Service	Default Settings	User Configurable		
Navigational Warnings	Enabled	No		
Meteorological Warnings	Enabled	No		
Ice Reports	Disabled	Yes		
SAR and Piracy Warnings	Enabled	No		
Meteorological Forecasts	Enabled	No		
Pilot Service Messages	Disabled	Yes		
AIS	Disabled	Yes		
LORAN Messages	Disabled	Yes		
SATNAV Messages	Disabled	Yes		
Other Navaids Messages	Disabled	Yes		
Other NAV Warnings	Disabled	Yes		

Table 33: MSI Settings, Coastal Warning Services

NOTE: In Figure 181 it is illustrated that Ice Reports has been enabled for Coastal Warning Areas. This setting will apply to all Coastal Warning Areas watched.

Area By Fixed Position

As an alternative to configure MSI Settings for NAVAREA / METAREA and Coastal Warning Areas, Area By Fixed Position can be configured for receiving MSI information from a predefined position of interest. The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system can configure a static position (latitude / longitude) with a fixed radius of 300 NM. All NAVAREA / METAREA and Coastal Warning Areas intercepted and included in this fixed circle will be added to the list of Sea Areas Sea Areas, in which the terminal will receive MSI information from.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:01 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E	llı.
Fixed Position	
Latitude	-
Longitude	-
Edit	

Area By Fixed Position: MENU -> GMDSS -> MSI Settings -> Area By Fixed Position

Figure 184: MSI Settings, Area By Fixed Position (1 of 3)

UTC: 2024-09-11 POSN: 55°49.154N	08:02 012°29.288E Fixed Po	<u>123</u> osition	lin.
Latitude Longitude			00°00.000N -
Done			Cancel

Inserting position (latitude and longitude) in order to receive MSI information from this point of interest.

Figure 183: MSI Settings, Area By Fixed Position (2 of 3)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:0 POSN: 55°49.154N 012)2 °29.288E	llı.
	Fixed Position	
Latitude		57°38.071N
Longitude		018°16.471E
	Edit	Clear All

Position inserted and Area By Fixed Position activated.

Figure 182: MSI Settings, Area Fixed By Position (3 of 3)

NOTE: MSI Settings Area By Fixed Position is an alternative to configure NAVAREA / METAREA and Coastal Warning Areas in order to receive MSI information from a predefined position of interest.

Distress Settings

The LT-4200S GMDSS system has a submenu from where all relevant Distress Settings can be configured. The Distress Settings window has the following menu path: MENU -> GMDSS -> Distress Settings

The Distress Settings window consist of the following configuration items:

- Distress RCC
- Auto-dial
- Nature of Distress

The configuration items will be further described in the next sections.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:02 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E Distress Setting	gs	Distress Settings:
Distress RCC Auto-dial Nature of Distress	Automatic Enabled Undesignated	Distress Settings

Figure 185: GMDSS submenu (Distress Settings)

Distress RCC

The Distress Settings, Distress RCC can be configured to the following options:

- Automatic
- Manual

The Distress RCC recommended setting is Automatic. The Distress RCC has been configured during completion of the Installation Wizard, see *Installation Wizard* on page 63. In Automatic mode the Distress Alert, Distress Call, Safety Calling and Safety Messaging (Distress, Urgency, or Safety) will be routed to the RCC responsible for the Sea Area, in which the vessel is located. In Distress RCC Manual mode the specific RCC selected will be used for routing the Distress Alert, Distress Call, Safety Calling and Safety Messaging (Distress, Urgency, or Safety) regardless of where the vessel is located.

UTC: 2024-09 POSN: 55°49.1	9-11 08:02 54N 012°29.288E	atl
	Distress RCC	
Distress	Automatic	Itomatic
Auto-dia	Manual	Enabled
Nature o		signated
		_
Selec	t	Cancel

Use the Navigation key to select Automatic or Manual RCC.

Figure 186: Distress Settings, Distress RCC (1 of 3)

NOTE:The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system can always enter the Distress Settings, RCCSettings and change the setting of the Distress RCC between Automatic and Manual mode.

The following figures, Figure 187 and Figure 188, illustrates how the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system can change Distress RCC from Automatic to Manual mode. In Manual mode the specific Distress RCC selected will be displayed in the Distress Settings window. In this example: AlamedaTEST has been configured.

U 1	TC: 2024-09-11 08:02		al
PO	Distress RCC		
E	AlamedaTEST	United States	
	East_TEST_RCC	Iridium	
	NorfolkTEST	United States	
	RCC Atlantic Area Co	United States	
	RCC New Zealand	New Zealand	
		a a 10	
	Select	Cancel	

If Distress RCC, Manual has been selected, then the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system can select an RCC from a list.

Figure 187: Distress Settings, Distress RCC (2 of 3)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:02 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°2	9.288E	ltı.
D	istress Settings	
Distress RCC	A	lamedaTEST
Auto-dial		Enabled
Nature of Distre	iss U	ndesignated

The Manual RCC selected will be shown in Distress Settings with its RCC name.

Figure 188: Distress Settings, Distress RCC (3 of 3)

NOTE: During completion of the Installation Wizard and whenever there are changes to the GMDSS configuration file received from the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS), the LT-4200S GMDSS system will get the latest version of the GMDSS configuration file, which may contain changes to e.g. the RCC Contacts. The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system should expect that Iridium will add new RCCs frequently after introducing the Iridium GMDSS Service.

<u>Auto-dial</u>

The Distress Settings, Auto-dial can be configured to the following options:

- Enabled
- Disabled

The default setting of the Auto-dial is Enabled. It is always possible to configure the Auto-dial setting at any time after the Installation Wizard has been completed.

If the Auto-dial is configured to Enabled, then the LT-4200S GMDSS system will automatically call the RCC, if the DISTRESS button has been activated and once the Distress Alert messages has been delivered to the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS). The Distress Alert and Distress Call is described in further details in *Distress Alert & Distress Call* on page 80.

The following figures, Figure 189 and Figure 190, illustrates how the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system can change Auto-dial from Enabled to Disabled.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:03 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E		lh.
Distress S	Settings	
Auto-dial		Disabled
		Enabled
Apply		Cancel

Auto-dial: MENU -> GMDSS -> Distress Settings -> Auto-dial

Figure 189: Distress Settings, Auto-dial (1 of 2)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:03 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E	llı.
Distress Settings	
Distress RCC	RccLT
Auto-dial	Disabled
Nature of Distress	Undesignated

Auto-dial configured to Disabled (the LT-4200S GMDSS system will not automatically make a Distress Call to the RCC).

Figure 190: Distress Settings, Auto-dial (2 of 2)

NOTE: The Auto-dial configuration is by default set to Enabled, which means that the LT-4200S GMDSS system automatically will call the RCC after a Distress Alert messages has successfully been delivered to the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS), after the DISTRESS button has been pushed and held for a minimum 3 seconds.

Nature of Distress

The Distress Settings, Nature of Distress can be configured to the following options:

- Undesignated
- Fire/explosion
- Flooding
- Collision
- Grounding
- Listing
- Sinking
- Disabled and adrift
- Abandoning ship
- Piracy/armed attack
- Man overboard

There are two methods of configuring Nature of Distress when the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system is sending a Distress Alert message to the RCC:

- When the DISTRESS button has been activated an initial Distress Alert message will been sent to the RCC (Nature of Distress = Undesignated). Hereafter, the user of the system can use the soft key 'Select Nature', and an updated Distress Alert message will now be sent with the chosen Nature of Distress information. This method is illustrated and described in details in *Distress Alert & Distress Call* on page 80.
- 2) The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system must navigate to MENU -> Distress Settings -> Nature of Distress and configure the Nature of Distress that must be informed to the RCC. Hereafter the operator of the system pushes the DISTRESS button and activates the Distress Alert message. The Initial Distress Alert message will contain the Nature of Distress information configured.



Nature of Distress: MENU -> GMDSS -> Distress Settings -> Nature of Distress

Figure 191: Distress Settings, Nature of Distress

NOTE: By default, Nature of Distress is configured to Undesignated. It is always possible to send an updated Distress Alert message to the RCC, where the Nature of Distress information is provided or changed. If Distress Settings, Nature of Distress is not configured in the LT-4200S GMDSS system, then Undesignated will be sent in the initial Distress Alert message to the RCC.

Position Settings

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is default configured to use the built-in GNSS receiver, Automatic (GNSS) mode, for determining the current position of the vessel. The position is primarily used for:

- Distress Alert sent to the RCC upon activation of a Distress
- Location information updates sent to the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS)

In case the built-in GNSS receiver has a malfunction or if the user for some other reason (e.g. GNSS spoofing) is required to manually enter the current position of the vessel, this can be done in Position Settings (MENU -> GMDSS -> Position Settings).

The following instruction will help you change Position Settings from Automatic to Manual mode:

- 1. Select Source of Position and press ENTER
- 2. Select Manual Input and press ENTER
- 3. Fill in the Latitude and Longitude fields
- 4. Fill in the Time of Position field with the time in UTC at which the vessel was at the position entered in the Latitude and Longitude fields (*note*: This may not be the current time)
- 5. The Course over Ground (COG) and Speed over Ground (SOG) are optional and can be set to zero if unknown
- 6. When all fields have been assigned a value, press the soft key 'Apply' to apply the manual position
- **NOTE**: The LT-4200S GMDSS system is by default configured to Automatic (GNSS) position mode. The manual position mode should only be used, if the Automatic (GNSS) position mode is not providing valid information.

The Position Settings illustrated in Figure 192 shows the LT-4200S GMDSS system configured to Automatic (GNSS) position mode.



Position Settings: MENU -> GMDSS -> Position Settings

Figure 192: Position Settings, Manual Position (1 of 12)

Figure 192 to Figure 203 illustrates how the Position Settings, Source of Position is changed from Automatic (GNSS) to Manual position mode.

NOTE: Please be aware that, if manual position mode is set, while the LT-4200S GMDSS system has no valid position from the GNSS receiver, the system will automatically switch to automatic mode, as soon as it gets a valid position (3D fix).

Manual Position

UTC: 2024-09-11 POSN: 55°49.154N	08:03 012°29.288E Position S	Settings	llı.
Source of Po	osition	Auton M	natic (GNSS) Ianual Input
Apply			Cancel

Source of Position is changed from Automatic (GNSS) to Manual Input. Use the soft key 'Apply'.

Figure 193: Position Settings, Manual Position (2 of 12)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:03 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E	<u>123</u>	lh.
Manua	l Position	
Latitude		00°00.000N
Longitude		-
Time of Position		-
COG		-
SOG		-
Done		Cancel

Latitude is configured. Use the soft key 'Done', when Latitude has been entered correctly.

Figure 194: Position Settings, Manual Position (3 of 12)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:03 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.287E Manua	123
Latitude Longitude Time of Position COG SOG	55°49.151N 000°00.000E - - -
Done	Cancel

Longitude is configured. Use the soft key 'Done', when Longitude has been entered correctly.

Figure 195: Position Settings, Manual Position (4 of 12)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:04 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.2	288E	الد.
Ma	inual Posit	ion
Latitude		55°49.151N
Longitude		012°29.291E
Time of Position		2024-09-11 08:03
COG		010.0°
SOG		5.0 knots
Apply	Edit	Cancel

Time of Position, COG, and SOG must be entered. Use soft key 'Apply' when all inputs have been entered correctly.

Figure 196: Position Settings, Manual Position (5 of 12)

Manual Position (-00:00) POSN: <mark>55°49.151N_012°29.291E</mark>	ltı.
Position Settings	
Source of Position	Manual Input
Manual Position	Now

Figure 197: Position Settings, Manual Position (6 of 12)

Manual Position (-0 POSN: <mark>55°49.151N 012°29</mark>	3:59) <mark>.291E</mark>	.11	
connected			
LT-420	00S GMDSS S	System	
Safety Call	MSI	Safety Message	
Figure 109: Desition (Cottings Ma	nual Desition (7 of 12)	

Figure 198: Position Settings, Manual Position (7 of 12)

Manual Position (-04 POSN: <mark>55°49.151N 012°29.</mark>	4:00) 291E	.al
···.	·iridiu	um°
LT-420	conne OS GMDSS S	cted System
Safety Call	MSI	Safety Message

Figure 199: Position Settings, Manual Position (8 of 12)

Manual Position (- POSN: <mark>55°49.151N 012°29</mark>	9) <mark>•</mark> !	ıll	
LT-42	connected GMDSS System		
Safety Call	MSI Safety Messag	e	

The manual position will be colored orange to indicate invalid until it has been updated.

Figure 200: Position Settings, Manual Position (9 of 12)

Manual Position is now being used as the position in the system. See information in the status bar (position is colored yellow to indicate low integrity).

In the status bar the age of the Manual Position is shown. (-03:59) indicates that the position is three hours and 59 minutes old.

When the Manual Position is more than 4 hours old, a

BAM alert caution (doubtful pos) will be

raised.

Lars Thrane A/S

Manual Position POSN: Please update posit	ion !		llı.	
LT-4200S GMDSS System		When the Manual Position is older than 24 hours the status bar will indicate "POSN: Please update position".		
Safety Call	MSI	Safety Me	essage	

Figure 201: Position Settings, Manual Position (10 of 12)

Update Manual Position

In manual position mode the position must be updated every 4 hours. A BAM alert active caution (doubtful pos) will be activated when the manual position is older than 4 hours. The position will be colored yellow to indicate low integrity when in manual position mode and colored orange when the position is older than 4 hours to indicate invalid. Make a long press on the MENU button to access the BAM Alerts. Hereafter press the soft key 'Review' to update the manual position.

Manual Positi POSN: <mark>55°49.151N_0</mark> ′	on (-04:00) 12°29.292E	.atl
Count: 1	BAM Alerts	Page 1/1
POUDTFUL POUDTFUL OUDTFUL POUDTFULPOUDTFULPOUDTFUL POUDTFUL POUDTFUL POUDTFUL POUDTFUL POUDT	os e manual position	
	Review	

BAM alert active caution (doubtful pos) available since Manual Position is older than 4 hours.

Figure 202: Position Settings, Manual Position (11 of 12)

Manual Position (- POSN: <mark>55°49.151N 012°29</mark> M	04:00) 9.292E Ianual Position	lili.
Latitude		55°49.151N
Longitude		012°29.292E
Time of Position	20	020-11-30 12:15
COG		000.0°
SOG		0.0 knots
Apply	Edit	Cancel

By pressing the soft key 'Review' it is possible to update the Manual Position.

Figure 203: Position Settings, Manual Position (12 of 12)

NOTE: In manual position mode the position must be updated every 4 hours. A BAM alert active caution (Doubtful pos) will be shown after 4 hours. The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system must enter a new up-to-date position (MENU -> GMDSS -> Position Settings).

Printer Settings

The Printer Settings submenu is a conditional submenu and will only be present if a LT-3160S Printer Adapter is installed on the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The Printer Settings conditional submenu is seen on Figure 204.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:05 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.2	88E	ltı.	
MSI Messages Safety Messages	Auto Print Safety, Urgeno Safety, Urgeno	y, Distress y, Distress	Printer Settings / Auto Print: MENU -> GMDSS -> Printer Settings

Figure 204: Printer Settings

It is possible to configure which MSI Messages and Safety Messages are automatically printed - this is only possible if a certified printer is connected via the printer adapter. By default, the LT-4200S GMDSS system will print both MSI Messages and Safety Messages of Safety, Urgency or Distress priority. The user can configure the system to only print Urgency or Distress priority. This is configurable for both MSI Messages and Safety Messages and Safety Messages and Safety Messages. See Figure 204 to Figure 206.



Figure 206: Printer Settings

Location Information

The LT-4200S GMDSS system has a window, where it is possible to read out details about the Sea Area and responsible RCC, in which the terminal is located:

- NAVAREA
- METAREA
- Coastal Warning Area
- Responsible RCC

Location Information has the following menu path: MENU -> GMDSS -> Location Information

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:05 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.287E Location Inf	formation	الد.	
NAVAREA		1	Location Information:
METAREA		1	MENU -> GMDSS ->
Coastal Warning Area		-	Location Information
Responsible RCC	RCC Atlantic A	rea	

Figure 207: GMDSS submenu (Location Information)

NOTE: Location Information is read-only and is dependent on the 'Source of Position' user setting.

<u>NAVAREA</u>

The world is divided into 21 geographical Sea Areas identified as NAVigational AREAs (NAVAREAs) ranging from NAVAREA 1 (United Kingdom) to 21 (Russian Federation). The NAVAREAs are listed in Table 34. The NAVAREAs are used to coordinate the communication of navigational hazards to mariners.

NAVAREAs		
NAVAREA No.	Coordinator	
1	United Kingdom	
2	France	
3	Spain	
4	United States of America (East)	
5	Brazil	
6	Argentina	
7	South Africa	
8	India	
9	Pakistan	
10	Australia	
11	Japan	
12	United States of America (West)	
13	Russia	
14	New Zealand	
15	Chile	
16	Peru	
17	Canada	
18	Canada	
19	Norway	
20	Russian Federation	
21	Russian Federation	

Table 34: NAVAREAs

 NOTE:
 The NAVAREAs and METAREAS MSI providers supporting the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) and Iridium SafetyCast service are updated on the Iridium website:

 https://www.iridium.com/gmdss-launch/

METAREA

METerological AREAs (METAREAs) are identical to the geographical NAVAREAs defined above. The METAREAs are used for the purpose of sending metrological information to mariners.

Coastal Warning Area (CWA)

Coastal Warning Areas are defined in geographical areas, where the NAV/METAREAs are not sufficient to split the coastal warning areas into well-defined areas for transmission of navigational and metrological information. It is possible to configure Coastal Warning Areas in the system, in which it is desirable to receive information from, although you are not in this specific area.

Coastal Warning Areas (CWA)			
NAVAREA No. Area Sub-areas			
10	Australia	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, and H	
14	New Zealand	Z	

Table 35: Coastal Warning Areas

NOTE: The Coastal Warning Areas (CWA) listed in Table 35 is reflecting the Coastal Warning Areas supported by the Iridium GMDSS system (IGS) by Commercial Service Introduction (CSI). The list of Coastal Warning Areas should be expected to change over time and more Coastal Warning Areas can dynamically be added by Iridium and will automatically be pushed to the LT-4200S GMDSS system without any user interaction.

Responsible RCC

For each NAV/METAREA there will be at least one responsible Rescue Coordination Center (RCC). All responsible RCCs supporting the Iridium GMDSS Service will automatically be 'pushed' to the LT-4200S GMDSS system via the GMDSS configuration file.

SES Information

The LT-4200S GMDSS System has a window, which contains registration information about the Ship Earth Station (SES). The SES Information is received from the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS), where information has been registered during commissioning of the system via an Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP), see *Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF) on page 61* for further details. If information is incorrect please contact your Service Provider.

During completion of the Installation Wizard the SES Information is verified and confirmed. The SES Information is read-only. The SES Information has the following menu path: MENU -> GMDSS -> SES Information.

The SES Information contains the following information:

- SES Name
- SES MSISDN
- Vessel Name
- Vessel MMSI
- Vessel IMO No.
- Vessel Call Sign
- Vessel Flag

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:0 POSN: 55°49.154N 012	5 °29.287E	lh.
	SES Information	
SES Name		SES2
SES MSISDN	+88167	2700048
Vessel Name	GW GMDSS CEI	RTUS T
Vessel MMSI	99	9999800
Vessel IMO no.		9999800

SES Information: MENU -> GMDSS -> SES Information

Figure 208: GMDSS submenu (SES Information)

SES Name

SES Name can be configured to either SES1 or SES2, when completing the Iridium Maritime Safety Service Activation Form (MSSAF). Vessels with requirement for only one LT-4200S GMDSS system shall use SES Name = SES1. If the vessel has a requirement for dual GMDSS systems, then SES Name = SES1 and SES Name = SES2 must be registered for the two GMDSS systems onboard.

SES MSISDN

SES MSISDN is an abbreviation for SES Mobile Station International Subscriber Directory Number (MSISDN) and is a unique number identifying the satellite telephone and related to the GMDSS SIM card. It is the MSISDN number which shall be used for incoming non-priority voice calls to the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The MSISDN number is also used as calling party for outgoing non-priority voice calls.

Vessel Name

Vessel Name must be used which is registered with the local flag state and maritime registration authorities.

Vessel MMSI

MMSI is an abbreviation for Maritime Mobile Service Identity and is a 9-digit unique number used to identify vessels. The MMSI number is assigned by the local maritime authorities.

Vessel IMO No.

IMO No. is abbreviation for International Maritime Organization Number and is a unique identification number for a vessel, which must follow the ship throughout its lifetime, also by rebuilding and renaming. The IMO No. consist of the letters *IMO* followed by 7-digits.

Vessel Call Sign

The unique alphanumeric name that belongs to the vessel. Used for identification of the vessel when communicating. The vessel Call sign must change if the vessel flag is changed.

Vessel flag

Identification of the flag state in which the vessel is registered.

Terminal Test

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports a 'Terminal Test' function, which is testing the satellite link to the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) and performing the following individual tests: Distress Alert, Distress Call, and Maritime Safety Information (MSI). Also, LT-3150S Alarm Panel(s) and LT-3160S Printer Adapter connected via the LT-3140S Interface Unit may be tested as part of the Terminal Test. The Terminal Test function can be activated from the GMDSS submenu (MENU -> GMDSS -> Terminal Test). Figure 209 to Figure 226 illustrates the Terminal Test function.



Terminal Test: MENU -> GMDSS -> Terminal Test

Figure 209: Terminal Test (1 of 18)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:06 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E	.ati
Terminal Test	
GMDSS Test	Ready
Charl	
Start	

Figure 210: Terminal Test (2 of 18)



Figure 211: Terminal Test (3 of 18)

Start the Terminal Test by using the soft key 'Start'.

The DISTRESS button on the LT-4210S Control Unit must be used to activate the Terminal Test.

	Verify Distress	atl.
Please lift lie DISTRESS by for 3 second verification Distress Call	Activating Distress 3	DISTRESS
Abort		

Lift the lid to the DISTRESS button and push the button for a minimum of three seconds (colored green to indicate test).

Figure 212: Terminal Test (4 of 18)

Verify Distress			
You have initiated verification. Please wait for the Distress Alert and Distress Call to complete.			
Distress Alert Distress Call	In Progress Pending		
Abort			

Distress Alert = In Progress Distress Call = Pending

Distress Alert = Passed Distress Call = In Progress (voice prompt available)

Figure 213: Terminal Test (5 of 18)

Verify Distress			
You have initiated verification. Please wait for the Distress Alert and Distress Call to complete.			
Distress Alert Passed			
Distress Call In Progress			
Abort			

Figure 214: Terminal Test (6 of 18)

Verify Distress				
You have initiated verification. Please wait for the Distress Alert and Distress Call to complete.				
Distress Alert	Passed			
Distress Call	Passed			
Abort (29s)	Next			

Distress Alert = Passed Distress Call = Passed Press the soft key 'Next' to continue.

Figure 215: Terminal Test (7 of 18)



MSI	
fication to complete.	
Passed	MSI = Passed
	Use the soft key 'Next' to continue the Terminal Test.
Next	
	MSI

Figure 217: Terminal Test (9 of 18)

Verify Alarm Panel(s)	lh.	
Please lift lid and briefly press (<1s) the DISTRESS button on each Alarm Panel.	_	
Pressing the DISTRESS button on the Alarm Panel(s) during verification is acknowledged with a simple Key Beep sound.		
Abort (27s) Skip		

Figure 218: Terminal Test (10 of 18)

Verify Alarm Panel(s) Verification completes when the DISTRESS button has been pressed on all Alarm Panels. Alarm Panel 1

Passed

Alarm Panel 2 Alarm Panel 3

Abort (30s)

Figure 219: Terminal Test (11 of 18)

Lift the lid to the DISTRESS button on connected Alarm Panels. Only press the DISTRESS button shortly (< 1 s).

Alarm Panel 3 has been verified.
Verify Alarm Panel(s)		
Verification completes when the DISTRESS button has been pressed on all Alarm Panels.		
Alarm Panel 1 Alarm Panel 2	Passed	
Alarm Panel 3	Passed	

Press the DISTRESS button on all connected Alarm Panels with a short press (< 1 s).

All Alarm Panels have been verified. Press Next to

continue.

Abort (28s)

Figure 220: Terminal Test (12 of 18)

Verify Alarm Panel(s)			
Verification completes when the DISTRESS button has been pressed on all Alarm Panels.			
Alarm Panel 1	Passed		
Alarm Panel 2	Passed		
Alarm Panel 3	Passed		
Abort (30s) Next			

Figure 221: Terminal Test (13 of 18)

١	/erify Printer	llı.	
Please press Next The test will verify and the Printer.	to start printer y both the Print	- test. :er Adapter	
Abort (27s)	Skip	Next	
Figure 222: Terminal Test (14 of 18)			

 Verify Printer
 III

 Please wait for Printer verification to complete.
 Printer

 Printer
 Passed

Figure 223: Terminal Test (15 of 18)

Press Next to verify Printer Adapter and connected

Adapter and connected Printer. This is only shown if a Printer Adapter and Printer is connected to the system.

Press Next to finalize the Terminal Test.

Test Results		
GMDSS Test has completed.		
Distress Alert	Passed	
Distress Call	Passed	
MSI	Passed	
Alarm Panel 1	Passed	
Alarm Panel 2	Passed	
	Don	e

Figure 224: Terminal Test (16 of 18)

Upon finalizing the Terminal Test, the Test Results will be displayed.



Upon pressing the 'Done' soft key, The LT-4200S GMDSS system will revert back to the default window and operation.



UTC: 2024-09-11 07:05 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29	.288E	lh.
* *•	: iridiu	ected [®]
LT-42	00S GMDSS S	System
Safety Call	MSI	Safety Message

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is back in the default window.

- **NOTE:** After 30 seconds of user inactivity, while a test is waiting for user input, the test will fail. When the result of a test is presented, the user has 30 seconds to continue with the next test or the Terminal Test will exit and revert to default window and operation as illustrated in Figure 226.
- NOTE: When testing external LT-3150S Alarm Panel(s) as part of the Terminal Test function, then only press the DISTRESS button with a short press (< 1 s). The short press on the DISTRESS button will be acknowledged with a key beep sound from the LT-3150S Alarm Panel. On the LT-4210S Control Unit display the LT-3150S Alarm Panel will be marked with Passed in the Terminal Test and you can continue with the verification of any additional LT-3150S Alarm Panel(s) if more LT-3150S Alarm Panels are part of the system configuration.

Figure 226: Terminal Test (18 of 18)

NOTE: The Terminal Test function will be completed when the MSI test has passed. By pressing the soft key 'Done' the user will be redirected to the default window as illustrated in Figure 224.

Non-GMDSS System Services

General Calling

The LT-4200S system supports 3 x voice call via two high-quality voice and one standard quality voice line. The voice calls can be simultaneously active when using different voice lines. The system can be set up to use one, two or three voice lines. The voice lines are configurable to connect to multiple phones. Any voice call to or from the LT-4200S system will generate a record in the Call History placed in the Phone submenu (MENU -> Phone -> Call History), see *Phone* on page 154.

The three voice lines enables the owner of the LT-4200S GMDSS system to have three voice calls up at the same time from different phones. e.g., the bridge can have an active call, while the captain can have an active call simultaneously from his cabin. The three voice lines each have their own unique MSISDN (phone number) and they function as separate entities, with the user being able to configure SIP phones for Lines 2 and 3. and the LT-4210 Control Unit for all three lines.

The system is per default set to choose voice line automatically and will choose line 2 per default when initiating outgoing Routine calls, however this can be configured to either automatic or manual selection, as described, *Settings* from page 157.

- **NOTE**: Verify that the LT-4200S GMDSS system is ready to make or receive a voice call. Check the network registration status, as illustrated in Table 16 on page 54 (Network Status Slot 1), which is presenting the signal level and network registration status.
- NOTE: Always, make sure to have a LT-3120 Handset and LT-3121 Cradle properly installed and connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit. LT-4210S Control Unit handset connector is illustrated in Figure 2 on page 7. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will generate a BAM alert, if the LT-3120 Handset is not connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit (Lost handset).
- **NOTE**: The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports connection of external SIP phones. The connection of external SIP phones is described in *External SIP Phones* on page 142.

Voicemail

The LT-4200S GMDSS System has a built in Voicemail. The voicemail is only present for Line 1- 3. Incoming calls that are not answered or declined will be forwarded to the voicemail system. Here the call can record a voicemail message. On the LT-4200S GMDSS System there are two ways to reach the voicemail. Either long press the '1' key on the dialpad or navigate to contacts and select the voicemail number. Upon longpressing the '1' key or by calling through contacts, the user will be prompted to select either Line 1, Line 2 or Line 3. Note that for this to be possible the CU handset must have Line 2 and Line 3 assigned. If these are not assigned the voicemail cannot be reached from the CU. When accessing the voicemail the user is prompted for the pin code. This PIN is the last 7 digits of the MSISDN number, which also means the PIN is different for Line 2.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports Mobile Originated (MO) and Mobile Terminated (MT) voice calls. The following sub sections will describe and illustrate the outgoing and incoming voice calls.

Mobile Originated (MO) - Outgoing

An outgoing voice call can be established as described in Table 36.

Mode	Position of	Description
	Handset	
on-hook	Handset placed in	Type the number and use the off-hook button.
	cradle until voice	Use the off-hook button and select the soft key 'Contacts' or 'Call History'.
	established	Select the entry and use the off-hook button to initiate the voice call.
		Navigate to Contacts or Call History by using the MENU button (MENU ->
		Phone -> Contacts or Call History) and use the off-hook button when the
		entry has been selected. The voice call will now be established.
off-hook	Handset lifted out	Lift the handset out of the cradle (ready tone is available). Type the
	of cradle initially	number and wait 10 seconds or use the # key to initiate the voice call.
		Table 36: Initiate Mobile Originated (MO) Voice Call

The voice call (on-hook and off-hook mode) will be described and illustrated on the following pages.

On-hook mode:

In on-hook mode the user can either type in the number directly in the display or use the Contacts or Call History to identify the number to be called while the handset is still placed in the cradle. Once the voice call has been established (duration starts to count) the user can lift the handset out of the cradle. The example in this section shows how to use the off-hook button, identifying an entry in the Contacts, and initiate the voice call by pressing the off-hook button.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:07 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29	.287E	<u>123</u>	الد. م
Plea	se enter nur	nber	
Safety Contacts	Contacts	Call	History

Press the off-hook button (colored green) on the LT-4210S Control Unit. Hereafter press the soft key 'Contacts'.

Figure 227: Outgoing Voice Call, on-hook mode (1 of 5)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:07 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.	288E Contacts		ltı.
Thrane Test		0045	29401008
New	Delete		

Use the Navigation key and select the contact to be dialed. Press the off-hook button to start connecting the call.

Figure 228: Outgoing Voice Call, on-hook mode (2 of 5)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:07 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E	¥	الد مى
Dialing		
Thrane Te	st	
00452940100	8	

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is connecting a voice call to the contact 'Thrane Test' (004529401008).

Figure 229: Outgoing Voice Call, on-hook mode (3 of 5)



The LT-4200S GMDSS system has established a voice call to 'Thrane Test' (Duration: 00:03).

Figure 230: Outgoing Voice Call, on-hook mode (4 of 5)



The voice call can be terminated by placing the handset in the cradle or use the on-hook button (colored red).

Figure 231: Outgoing Voice Call, on-hook mode (5 of 5)

The mute symbol illustrated in Figure 230 in the status bar will disappear as soon as the handset is lifted out of the cradle. The handset will always be muted when placed in the cradle. The voice from the connected party will be available in the LT-4210S Control Unit speaker, until the handset is lifted out of the cradle. It is always possible to mute and unmute the microphone in the handset from the LT-4210S Control Unit (soft key 'Mute' and 'Unmute') when having an active call and the handset is lifted out of the cradle.

NOTE: Adding a new entry in the Contacts (MENU -> Phone -> Contacts) is described and illustrated in *Phone* on page 154.

Off-hook mode:

The off-hook mode can be activated by lifting the handset out of the cradle. In off-hook mode, the user will be met by a ready tone and the help text "Please enter number" - hereafter, the called number can be entered, using the numeric keypad. It is not possible to regret, if one or more wrong digits are typed in, for the dialed number. In this case, the user must on-hook the phone, and dial the correct number again. The example below shows how to establish the voice call (the other part of the voice call is identical to the onhook mode described in the previous section).

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:08 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.2	88E <u>1</u>	2 <u>3</u> S I	l
Please	e enter numb	er	
Safety Contacts	Contacts	Call History	-

Lift the handset out of the cradle and a 'ready tone' will be available in the handset speaker.

Figure 232: Outgoing Voice Call, off-hook mode (1 of 3)



Please enter number

004529401008

Type the number in the display by using the numeric keypad (it is not possible to regret).

Figure 233: Outgoing Voice Call, off-hook mode (2 of 3)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:08 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E	S II
Dialing	
Thrane Test	
004529401008	
Mute	

Use the off-hook button, # key, or wait 10 seconds for the LT-4200S GMDSS system to start connecting the voice call.

Figure 234: Outgoing Voice Call, off-hook mode (3 of 3)

NOTE: The LT-4200S GMDSS system will provide the user with information, while connecting and throughout the voice call. In case of problems with the satellite network or connection to the called party (far-end), the user will be informed through a voice prompt, and by status cause codes, that will be presented on the display (e.g. "Temporary link failure").

Mobile Terminating (MT) - Incoming

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports receiving an incoming voice call. The calling party must use the LT-4200S GMDSS system MSISDN number. The LT-4200S GMDSS system MSISDN number is identified in the GMDSS submenu (MENU -> GMDSS -> SES Information), see SES Information on page 127. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will check the calling number up against the Contacts entries, if a match exists, the name of the contact will be shown for the incoming voice call.



Figure 236: Incoming Voice Call (2 of 3)



The voice call can be muted. To mute/unmute the handset microphone during a voice call, use the soft key

Figure 237: Incoming Voice Call (3 of 3)

NOTE: The General Calling (priority = routine) voice call must be activated by the Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) in order to work. Check subscription status in the System submenu (MENU -> System -> Subscription Status), see System on page 164.

An incoming missed voice call is illustrated in the following figures: Figure 238 to Figure 240. By pressing the soft key 'Missed Calls(1)' the user will be redirected to the Call History (filter: Missed Calls). By pressing the soft key 'Show All', all Call History records will be shown (all incoming and outgoing calls).



A missed voice call is illustrated in the display (symbol in status bar and soft key showing 'Missed Calls(1)'.

UTC: 2024-09-12 07:0 POSN: 55°49.154N 012	7 °29.288E	lıı.
Line 2	Missed Calls	
► Thrane Test +4529401008		2024-09-12 07:06 Missed
Thrane Test +4529401008		2024-09-12 07:05 Missed
	Show All	

By pressing the soft key 'Missed Calls(1)' the user will be directed to the Call History (Missed Calls).

Figure 239: Incoming Voice Call, missed (2 of 3)

UTC: 2024-09-12 07:07 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°2	9.288E	lıı.
Line 2	Call History	
► Thrane Test +4529401008	202	4 -09-12 07:06 Missed
Thrane Test +4529401008	202	4-09-12 07:05 Missed
Test RCC DISTRESS	202	4 -09-12 06:57 13 sec
Show Missed		

Press the soft key 'Show All' and the normal view of the Call History will be shown.

Figure 240: Incoming Voice Call, missed (3 of 3)

NOTE: An incoming missed voice call is illustrated in the above figures. By highlighting the missed call in the Call History and press the off-hook button, the LT-4200S GMDSS system will start establishing a voice call to the party.

External SIP Phones

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is supporting connection of external SIP phones, up to 8 external SIP phones. The configuration of the SIP phones must be completed via the web server, see *Telephony* on page 218. Figure 241 is illustrating the connection of the external SIP phones. Connect the SIP phones directly to the LT-4210S Control Unit Ethernet (LAN port) or via the LT-3140S Interface Unit (use the spare LAN ports).



Figure 241: SIP phones

NOTE: The SIP phone might require a DHCP Server to get an IP address assigned. Depending on network setup, it might be needed to configure DHCP Server mode in the LT-4200S GMDSS system.

The LT-4210S Control Unit UI display (MENU -> System -> SIP Phones) will provide a 'live' registration status of the SIP phones configured from the web server.

UTC: 2021-10-22 09:0 POSN: 55°49.154N 012'	8 °29.290E SIP Phones	llı.	SIP Phones:
Number Caller 1100 1100 1101 1101	ID Lines 2 2	Status Registered Registered	MENU -> System -> SIP Phones

Figure 242: System Submenu (SIP Phones)

An active voice call to/from a SIP phone will be presented in the Status bar with the symbol showed in Figure 243. External SIP phones can only use the General Calling (priority = Routine).

UTC: 2024-09-11 07:05 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29	.288E	الد. 🎝
**•		ected [®]
LT-42	00S GMDSS	System
Safety Call	MSI	Terminate Call

External SIP voice call is using the satellite connection. Can be terminated by using the soft key 'Terminate Call'.

Figure 243: External SIP Voice Call

By using the soft key 'Terminate Call', the external voice call from the SIP phone will be terminated. A voice call from an external SIP phone will automatically be preempted, if a service with higher priority (Safety, Urgency, or Distress) is presented.

An incoming voice call taken by the SIP phone cannot be forwarded. Once a voice call has been taken by any of the 'lines' the voice call is locked to this user.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports local calling between the SIP phones and the LT-3120 Handset. The number plan is illustrated in Table 37. The Caller ID is defined by the user, when configuring the SIP phones.

LT-4200S GMDSS System Number Plan (local calls)		
Number	Caller ID	Comments
1000	LT-4200S User	LT-3120 Handset
1100	SIP Phone 1	
1101	SIP Phone 2	
1102	SIP Phone 3	
1103	SIP Phone 4	
1104	SIP Phone 5	
1105	SIP Phone 6	
1106	SIP Phone 7	
1107	SIP Phone 8	

Table 37: Number Plan (local calls)

NOTE: The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports three outgoing satellite voice connections simultaneously.

Analogue Phone Adapter

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is supporting connection of an external Analogue Phone Adapter (e.g. Grandstream). The number of POTS' phones (Plain Old Telephone System), which can be connected to the Analogue Phone Adapter, must be configured as SIP phones in the LT-4200S GMDSS system, see configuration of SIP phones in *Telephony* on page 218. Connect the SIP phones directly to the LT-4210S Control Unit Ethernet (LAN port) or via the LT-3140S Interface Unit (use the spare LAN ports).



Figure 244: Analogue Phone Adapter

NOTE:The Analogue Phone Adapter might require a DHCP Server to get an IP address assigned.Depending on network setup, it might be needed to configure DHCP Server mode in the LT-
4200S GMDSS system.

The Analogue Phone Adapter (POTS phones) will be handled as SIP phones in the LT-4200S GMDSS system. Therefore, carefully read the section describing the SIP phones in section *External SIP Phones* on page 142.

In order to provide some guidance for configuration of an Analogue Phone Adapter, the following description will outline some important steps for configuring an Analogue Phone Adapter.

Configuration of Grandstream HT802 Adapter (example):

If you would like to connect the Analogue Phone Adapter directly to the LT-4200S GMDSS system, then it might help you to insert a passive switch between the LT-4200S GMDSS system and the Analogue Phone Adapter, while completing the setup (to allow for an extra LAN port during configuration).

- Step 1: Connect the LT-4200S GMDSS system, Analogue Phone Adapter, and PC using a passive switch
- Step 2: Login to the LT-4200S GMDSS system web server. The IP address can be read from the display (MENU -> System -> Network: IP address)
- Step 3: Configure the LT-4200S GMDSS system to 'DHCP Server' mode (depending on network setup) and configure the SIP phones (Password, and Caller ID)
- Step 4: The Analogue Phone Adapter will now have an IP address assigned. Connect a POTS phone to the Analogue Phone Adapter and use the IVR menu to read out the IP address (off hook handset and type '***' followed by '02'). Check the instructions provided for the Analogue Phone Adapter
- Step 5: Log in to the Analogue Phone Adapter and configure FXS PORT 1 and PORT 2 (Primary SIP Server, SIP User ID, Authenticate ID, Password, and Name)
- Step 6: The POTS phones should now be registered and ready to use (the passive switch can be removed)

Commercial Tracking

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports Commercial Tracking. This section will in brief describe the commercial tracking functionality of the system.

The commercial tracking feature is activated by the Iridium certified Service Provider. By default, commercial tracking is enabled, see Commercial Tracking on page 221.

It is possible to have up to 4 independent activations of the commercial tracking feature, meaning that the system can use 4 different Service Providers at a time to track the vessel. If Commercial tracking is enabled and activated by the service provider. The tracking symbol will be shown in the header of the GUI on the LT-4210S GMDSS Control Unit. It is not possible to discern from the LT-4200S GUI who is tracking the vessel, only if it is being tracked or not. To see who is using the Commercial tracking feature, head to the LT-4200S built-in web served. See *Commercial Tracking* on page 221.

Supplementary services

The LT-4200S GMDSS system offers a list of voice call features. What they are and how they function is described in the following sections

Call Barring

The call barring feature allows the operator of the LT-4200S GMDSS System to block all incoming or all outgoing calls. To enable and disable this follow the instructions below

Outgoing Call barring

- Activate Dial *33*<4 digit password>
- Deactivate Dial *34*<4 digit password>
- Check status Dial *33

Incoming Call barring

- Activate Dial *35*<4 digit password>
- Deactivate Dial *36*<4 digit password>
- Check status Dial *35

NOTE: The default password is **0000**.

Call Forwarding

The LT-4200S GMDSS system can be set up to forward all incoming calls based upon the interaction with the system. The call can be forwarded due to four reasons: Unconditional, Busy, No Answer, and Not Reachable. Configuring the system to one or more call forwarding states can be done as per using the codes listed in Table 38 below.

Call Forwarding				
Cause	Register	Activation	Deactivation	Check Status
Unconditional	*21* <number></number>	*21	*22	*23
Busy	*67* <number></number>	*67	*68	*69
No Answer	*61* <number>*<timeout>#</timeout></number>	*61	*62	*63
Not Reachable	*24* <number></number>	*25	*26	*27

Table 38: Call Forwarding

To activate call forwarding the user must first register and then activate the specific call forwarding feature. To deactivate or check status use the call codes as per Table 38.

Data

The LT-4200S GMDSS system offers the following Iridium Certus [®] data services

- Background IP data
- Secondary Data Flow (SDF)

This section describes the different ways the LT-4200S GMDSS system can be set up to handle outgoing and incoming data. The section describes the concepts and effects of the user actions regarding Data. For further information on how to configure the system for data management see *Web server, Network* on page 205 and *IP Data* on page 217. The Data usage can be seen in the Phone Usage submenu in the Phone menu. This is shown *in System Submenus, Phone.* Note that the LT-4210S does not present the Data usage with 100% accuracy as e.g., a bad connection could force the system to resend data packets, which is not tracked in the Data usage list. The Secondary Data Flow service is described in *Secondary Data Flow* on page 153.

NOTE: The LT-4200S GMDSS system has a built in DNS server which will cache user requests, efficiently limiting requests over the satellite link. Having an input DNS server reduces the user data stream, eventually reducing data cost.

Data activation

The LT-4200S GMDSS system can be configured to either 'Always on' or 'Manual start/stop', this can either be done on the Web server as described in Web server, IP Data on page 217.or via the LT-4210S Control Unit as shown in System Submenus, Settings.

<u>Always on</u>

When the system is set to *Always on* the data stream will as the name suggests always be open for activity. The system will be able to send data if need be and if permitted by the outgoing firewall / port forwarding rules.

Manual start/stop

When the background IP Data service is set to *Manual start/stop* the user has direct control of when data can be sent through the system. The user is able to control this via the IP Data submenu found under the

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:11 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	lh.
IP Data	
Activation	Manual
	Start Data

Figure 245: Manual data Start

Settings menu. This is controlled via *'Start Data'* or *'Stop Data'* soft key on the LT-4210S Control Unit, see Figure 245 and Figure 246. The *Manual start/stop* setting gives the operator of the system more direct control over when data can be transmitted and received by the system and will therefore be the more economical solution to outgoing IP data, as nothing is sent or received when the data stream is manually turned off.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:11 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.289E	lh. √1
IP Data	
Activation	Manual
2	stop Data

Figure 246: Manual data Stop

NOTE: PPPoE connections are not affected by Manual Start/stop

DNS

The LT-4200S GMDSS System contains a recursive caching DNS server. The DNS server resolves names in the local domain (hostname and DHCP client names), and uses external DNS to resolve names in other domains.

It is possible to use external DNS servers directly (without using the caching DNS server). However, if the firewall is enabled it is recommended always to use the caching DNS server.

- **NOTE:** If the firewall is enabled the DNS server only resolves names allowed by the firewall rules
- **NOTE:** The DHCP server automatically announces the address of the DNS server. When the LT-4200S GMDSS System is in DHCP client mode or IP static mode, the PC must manually be configured to use the DNS server at the LT-4200S Web Server.

Outgoing firewall

The LT-4200S system allows the user to configure the outgoing firewall to only allow specific network traffic. This permits the user to block outgoing network traffic so that IP data is only used for warranted actions. The effect of this action is shown on Figure 247. Setting up the outgoing firewall is described in *Configuration, Network* on page 205.



Figure 247: Outgoing firewall

Port forwarding

Port forwarding may be used on the LT-4200S system to remotely access IP data services running on user equipment connected to the LT-4200S LAN port. This allows the user of the system to configure web access for specific services using the LAN port on the LT-4200S. To be able to use port forwarding, the IP address of the system using the LT-4200S LAN port should be statically assigned. This is explained in detail in *Web server, Network* on page *205.*

NOTE: Port forwarding rules are not affected by using Manual Start/Stop for IP Data activation as that action only covers outgoing data.

Masquerading

If the user of the LT-4200S system has configured a data connection to a pc or service which has a preferred way of access to the Internet, then masquerading may be of use. Masquerading allows the user to change the IP address for services targeted by port forwarding. The source IP address will be changed to the IP address of the LT-4200S LAN port. This forces the service to use the LT-4200S data service. An example of this is illustrated in Figure 248. With masquerading active the connected PC can only see the LT-4200S LAN port IP address and is forced to use it to access the IP data.



Figure 248: Port forwarding (masquerading)

Remote access

The LT-4200S system offers the user the ability to remotely manage the LT-4200S web interface. This feature makes it possible to access the system from the internet. To enable activation of remote management it is required that the IP address provisioned to the terminal is known, and it is required that the IP address of the access point is provided to the GMDSS Service Provider. This is further described in *Public IP address* on page 151. How to configure the system for remote access is described in *System Submenus, Settings* from page 157.

Public IP address

To be able to use the remote management feature, the operator of the system needs to have the public IP address provisioned to the terminal, which is based on the IMEI and ICCID numbers. This is provisioned by Iridium, but the user must contact their Certus Service Provider for retrieval of the IP address.

In addition, the operator of the system needs to provide Iridium with the IP address of their remote access point. This IP address must also be provided to the GMDSS Service Provider. This is necessary as Iridium must configure their firewall to accept the IP address of the service point so that it can access the LT-4200S system remotely.

PPPoE

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) is a link layer network protocol used to facilitate direct communication between two network points. When PPPoE is used in an existing Ethernet/IP network, the PPPoE protocol creates an additional isolated IP network in parallel to the existing Ethernet/IP network. This logical separation of the two IP networks allows the LT-4200S to offer different properties and services on each network and thus also to the clients connected to the respective network. Something similar can be achieved with VLAN, but PPPoE has the additional advantages of being connection oriented and having built-in authentication.

Also important is that operating systems like Microsoft Windows can be easily configured **not** to send any data over the PPPoE network, except to/from applications explicitly configured to use the PPPoE network. Because PPPoE is connection oriented, the user can manually Connect/Disconnect from the PPPoE network an thus control data usage directly from the PC. Some applications can even Connect/Disconnect automatically making the use of PPPoE completely transparent.

NOTE: The IP data manual start/stop does **not** affect the PPPoE connection(s). To stop data flowing on a PPPoE connection, the PPPoE connection must be disconnected.

When configuring PPPoE in the LT-4200S, it is optional whether the network traffic shall be routed through the firewall. Avoiding the firewall can be useful in case of trusted applications (e.g. weather or email) or for complete network devices trusted not to misuse the satellite link. The later can be e.g IoT devices or an advanced network router, which can automatically route traffic between the LT-4200S and e.g. a VSAT system, depending on availability of the VSAT service.

- **IMPORTANT:** Do not configure the PC to use the PPPoE interface as the default route and simultaneously disable use of firewall
- **NOTE:** The LT-4200S PPPoE uses CHAP for authentication. The Authentication phase is encrypted, but not for the IP data.
- **NOTE:** PPPoE is per default disabled and must be activated for use.

Secondary Data Flow

Up to 4 Secondary Data Flows (SDF 1-4) may be provisioned by the service provider. Each SDF provides a separate on-air connection to an IP subnet determined by the service provider.

Note that even though each SDF provides a separate on-air connection the aggregated uplink/downlink speeds of all used SDFs together with the Background IP service cannot exceed the maximum IP data uplink/downlink speeds provided by the Iridium Certus 200 service.

Secondary Data Flow	VLAN id	Gateway address
SDF 1	5	192.168.11.1
SDF 2	6	192.168.12.1
SDF 3	7	192.168.13.1
SDF 4	8	192.168.14.1

Table 39: Secondary Data Flows

Using one or more SDFs requires hosts connected to the LAN interface of the LT-4200S to have a network interface configured with the VLAN id of the desired SDF.

The LT-4200S GMDSS System does not provide a DHCP server on the VLANs so hosts that wishes to use Secondary Data Flows must be manually configured to use the relevant SDF gateway address as either default gateway or gateway for the provisioned subnet of the SDF only.

Caching DNS server and firewall/port forwarding are not available on the Secondary Data Flows.

Secondary Data Flow connections are *Always on*. I.e. if a provisioned SDF is enabled by the user in the configuration, it will always be active

See the SDF section under *Network* starting on page 205.for a description of the SDF configuration page of the LT-4200S.

- **NOTE:** SDF will not prompt the Data arrows in the LT-4200S GUI as these are reserved for IP Data only.
- NOTE:For SDF configuration please refer to: LT doc No. 99-103307 Tech Note SDF Networking.
Contact Lars Thrane A/S to get access to the document.

System Submenus

This section describes and illustrates all the non-GMDSS submenus: Phone, Settings, and System. The submenus are accessed by pressing the MENU button.

Phone

The Phone submenu contains the following entries: Contacts, Call History and Phone Usage. See Figure 249 for the layout of the Phone submenu.



Figure 249: Phone submenu

<u>Contacts</u>

The Contacts provides a list of contacts created by the user. Create a new contact by pressing the soft key 'New' and add phone number and/or Email and name. The phone number is limited to numbers (e.g. 004529401008). The Contact list can contain 100 contacts. Use international number prefix, either '+' or '00XX' in front of the number. A contact can be deleted from the list by pressing the soft key 'Delete' and confirm this.



Figure 250: Phone submenu (Contacts)

- **NOTE**: The user can select an entry from the Contacts (e.g. Thrane Test) and use the Off-hook button to establish a voice call to the contact.
- **NOTE:** The user must define a Name for the contact but can input both Phone number and Email address or either of the two.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08: POSN: 55°49.154N 01	:11 2°29.288E	.atl
	Thrane Test	
Name		Thrane Test
Phone		004529401008
Apply	Edit	Cancel

Figure 251: Contacts (New Contact)

Call History

The Call History provides a complete list of all voice calls (Safety and General Calling): outgoing, incoming, and missed calls, as illustrated in Figure 252. 'Unknown' entries in the Call History will show the soft key 'New Contact' to help creating the 'Unknown' contacts in the Contact list. Use the soft key 'Show Missed' to filter for incoming missed calls.



Figure 252: Phone submenu (Call History)

Phone Usage

The Phone Usage submenu lists Trip and Lifetime terminal usage. To switch between Trip and Lifetime usage, press the softkey titled 'Show Lifetime/Trip'. The lists include Voice totals and Data totals Figure 253 to Figure 256.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:12 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E	lin.
Trip Usage	
Line 1 Total	0:06:52
Line 1 Outgoing	0:06:52
Line 1 Incoming	0:00:00
Line 2 Total	0:00:24
Line 2 Outgoing	0:00:24
Reset Show Lifetime	

Phone Usage: MENU -> Phone -> Phone Usage (Trip usage)

Figure 253: Phone submenu (Phone Usage)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:12 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E	.ul
Trip Usage	
Line 3 Outgoing	0:00:00
Line 3 Incoming	0:00:00
Data Total	0.000 kB
Data Download	0.000 kB
Data Upload	0.000 kB
Reset Show Lifetime	

Figure 254: Phone submenu (Phone Usage)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:12 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E Lifetime Usage	llı.
Line 1 Total	0:06:52
Line 1 Outgoing	0:06:52
Line 1 Incoming	0:00:00
Line 2 Total	0:00:24
Line 2 Outgoing	0:00:24
Show Trip	

Phone Usage: MENU -> Phone -> Phone Usage (Lifetime usage)

Figure 255: Phone submenu (Phone Usage)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:12 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E Lifetime Usage	ltı.
Line 3 Outgoing	0:00:00
Line 3 Incoming	0:00:00
Data Total	0.000 kB
Data Download	0.000 kB
Data Upload	0.000 kB
Show Trip	

Figure 256: Phone submenu (Phone Usage)

Settings

The Settings submenu contains the following entries: Audio, Display, Date & Time, and Reset Options. See Figure 257 for the layout of the Settings submenu.



Figure 257: Settings submenu

<u>Audio</u>

The Audio settings handles all audio levels and notifications. All audio levels are adjustable in ten levels. Here is a short description of the audio settings and their functionality in the LT-4200S GMDSS system (see Figure 258 for layout):

- Speaker Volume adjusts the output level of the LT-4210S Control Unit speaker (located below the DISTRESS button). The Speaker Volume setting is primarily used when operating the system with the LT-3120 Handset placed in LT-3121 Cradle (e.g. making a voice call). The Navigation key (arrows up/down) can be used to control the Speaker Volume output level, when audio is directed to control unit speaker.
- Handset Volume adjusts the output level of the LT-3120 Handset speaker (user audio). The user can adjust the Handset Volume during a voice call by using the LT-3120 Handset volume button (up/down) on the side of the handset.
- *Ringer Volume* adjusts the output level of the ringer, when an incoming voice call is presented in the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The Ringer output will be directed to the LT-3120 Handset (integrated ringer speaker on the back side) when placed in the LT-3121 Cradle. Otherwise, the LT-4210S Control Unit speaker is used for indicating an incoming voice call.
- *Key Beep* adjusts the output level of the audio feedback when using the LT-4210S Control Unit keypad. Can be configured to 'Off' if desired.

UTC: 2020-11-27 08 07 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.291E Audio	lin.	
Speaker Volume Handset Volume Ringer Volume Key Beep Notifications	80 % 60 % 40 % 20 %	Audio: MENU -> Settings -> Audio

Figure 258: Settings submenu (Audio)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:12 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.288E Notifications	llı.	
MSI Safety Messages	Enabled Enabled	Notifications: MENU -> Settings -> Audio -> Notifications

Figure 259: Settings Submenu (Notifications)

NOTE: Audio notifications can be disabled for MSI and Safety Messages. For MSI and Safety Messages the audio notification configuration is only valid for priority = Safety. The unread symbol in the status bar will still be shown if audio notifications are disabled.

Display

The Display settings handles all display settings: mode (day or night time) and brightness.

UTC: 2021-02-05 POSN: 55°49.152N	09:10 012°29.292E	ltı.	
	Display		
Mode		Day time	Display:
Brightness		100 %	MENU -> Settings -> Display

Figure 260: Settings submenu (Display)

NOTE:The display settings can also be configured using the 'Power & DIM' button. Short press on
the 'Power & DIM' button changes the brightness, whereas long press on the 'Power &
DIM' button changes between day and night time.

Date & Time

Date & Time settings provides the user with a possibility to change formats after completing the Installation Wizard. The LT-4200S GMDSS system support the following date formats: YYYY-MM-DD, D MMM YYYY, DD/MM/YYYY, and MM/DD/YYYY. The time format can be configured to either 24 or 12 hours.

UTC: 2020-11-27 POSN: 55°49.153N	08:17 012°29.290E	.al
	Date & Time	
Date Forma	t	YYYY-MM-DD
Time Forma	t	24 hours

Date & Time: MENU -> Settings -> Date & Time

Figure 261: Settings submenu (Date & Time)

NOTE: The Date & Time format will be configured initially when completing the Installation Wizard. The Installation Wizard is described and illustrated in *Installation Wizard* on page 63.

Phone Setup

The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS System can configure Automatic og Manual line selection. This is done in the Phone Setup submenu found under the Settings menu. To change configuration press the enter button while inside the Phone Setup menu.

	UTC: 2024-09-11 08:13 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.287E		ال.
	GMDSS Phone Settings	System	
	Date & Time		
	Phone Setup		
	IP Data		- 1
	Remote Access		- 1
	Reset Options		
•			

Figure 262: Settings submenu (Phone Setup)



Figure 263: Settings submenu (Phone Setup)

IP Data

IP Data can be configured and activated in the Settings menu under the IP Data submenu. Here the user can change between Manual mode and Always On. To change between modes press the enter key.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:13 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.287E	E		.ul
GMDSS Phone	Settings	System	
Date & Time Phone Setup			
IP Data			
Remote Access			
Reset Options			

Figure 264: Settings submenu (IP Data)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:13 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.287E	ltı.	
IP Data		
Activation	Manual	To start Manual IP Data, press the 'Start Data' softkey
	Start Data	

Figure 265: Settings submenu (IP Data)

Remote Access

The LT-4200S GMDSS System offers Remote Access. To activate this locate the Remote Access submenu found under the Settings menu. It is recommended that the login credentials of the 'Admin' user is changed prior to activation of Remote Access.



Figure 266: Settings submenu (Remote Access)



Remote Access is disabled by default.

Figure 267: Settings submenu (Remote Access)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:14 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.28	TE	ltı.
Web server		Disabled Enabled
Apply		Cancel

Press the 'Enter' key to change between disabled and enabled.

This warning will appear

changed the password

for the 'Admin' user.

if the user has not

Figure 268: Settings submenu (Remote Access)



Figure 269: Settings submenu (Remote Access)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:14 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.287E	llı.
Remote Access	
Web server	Enabled

Figure 270: Settings submenu (Remote Access)

Reset Options

The Reset Options handles the reset of the following user records and configurations: Call History, and Web Server Authentication. Use the soft key 'Execute' or the 'ENTER' button to activate the reset, when the correct Reset Option has been selected by the 'Navigation' key (arrow up/down). The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system will have to confirm the reset, see Figure 271 and Figure 272.

The user can reset the web authentication in case of loss of admin password or loss of access. By using Reset Web Authentication, all user authentication is reset allowing access to the web server. In case of a reset both username and password for the admin user is: admin.

Executing Network Recovery Mode will reboot the LT-4200S GMDSS system in a default Network mode allowing the user to access the LT-4200S GMDSS System Web Server in case of any issues. In contrast to Reset Web Authentication this boots the system with default Network settings, but will not reset any user input configuration.



Figure 271: Settings submenu (Reset Options)

UTC: 2024-09 POSN: 55°49.1	9-11 08:14 53N 012°29.288E	all
	Clear History	
Clear Hi Reset W Network	Are you sure you want to clear the call and data history?	
Yes		Cancel

Figure 272: Settings submenu (Reset Options)

NOTE: The reset of the web server authentication can be managed from the Settings submenu for the user to get access to the web server in the situation, where the user cannot find the changed password. To avoid unwanted access to the web server via the network interface, it is highly recommended to change the web server authentication password at any time. The web server authentication is described and illustrated in *Authentication* on page 196.

System

The System submenu contains the following entries: BAM Alert, Network, Tracking, SIP Phones, GNSS Status, Subscription, System Info, and Power Supply. See Figure 273 and Figure 274 for the layout of the System submenu.



Figure 274: System submenu

BAM Alerts

BAM Alerts provides an overview of the active alerts in the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The Bridge Alert Management (BAM) is described and illustrated in detail in *Bridge Alert Management (BAM)* on page 173.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08: POSN: 55°49.154N 01	16 2°29.288E	ltı.
	BAM Alerts	Page 1/1
	No Alerts	
-		

BAM Alerts: MENU -> System -> BAM Alerts (or long press on the MENU button)

Figure 275: System submenu (BAM Alerts)

NOTE: The BAM Alerts list illustrated in Figure 275 should under normal conditions be empty (No Alerts). Make sure to read the alerts carefully and take appropriate action.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:16 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E	BAM alert shown in the status bar (active warning). The blue dot indicates a change in the BAM Alerts, after the user has last been in the list.
Safety Call MSI Safety Message	
UTC: 2024-09-11 08:16 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E Count: 1 BAM Alerts Page 1/1 Lost handset Voice calls unavailable. Check cable	Long press on the MENU button to access the BAM Alerts (Lost Handset).
Figure 277: BAM Alerts (2 of 4)	
UTC: 2024-09-11 08:16 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.289E Count: 1 BAM Alerts Page 1/1 Count: 1 BAM Alerts Page 1/1 Count: 1 Cost handset Voice calls unavailable. Check cable ACK Alert Figure 278: BAM Alerts (3 of 4)	Press the soft key 'Silence All' to mute the audible alarm for 30 seconds.
UTC: 2024-09-11 08:17 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.289E Count: 1 BAM Alerts Page 1/1 Lost handset Voice calls unavailable. Check cable	Press the soft key 'ACK Alert' acknowledge the BAM alert.

Figure 279: BAM Alerts (4 of 4)

<u>Network</u>

The Network provides an overview for the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system of the IP network configuration and setup. The LT-4200S GMDSS system can be configured to: DHCP Client, DHCP Server, and Static IP address. The link status will provide the user with information about and whether an IP connection is established to the LT-4210S Control Unit. The IP address of the LT-4210S Control Unit is provided under the IP Address parameter illustrated in Figure 280.

UTC: 2020-11-27 08:45 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.291E	.al
Ne	etwork
Link Status	Up
Mode	DHCP Client
IP Address	10.1.10.235
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Gateway	10.1.10.1

Network: MENU -> System -> Network

Figure 280: System submenu (Network)

NOTE: Use the IP Address to access the built-in web server. Instructions to access the built-in web server is provided in *Accessing the built-in web server* on page 191.

SIP Phones

The SIP Phones functionality is described and illustrated in *External SIP Phones* on page 142.

GNSS Status

The GNSS Status provides an overview for the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system built-in GNSS receiver. The GNSS receiver can be configured from the web server, see *GNSS*, *BAM and MSI* on page 223.

UTC: 2021-04-08 11:22 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.292E	.ul
GNSS S	tatus
Fix Туре	3D + DGNSS
Latitude	55°49.153N
Longitude	012°29.292E
Time of Position	2021-04-08 11:22
COG	000.0°

Position Status: MENU -> System -> Position Status (upper view)

Figure 281: System submenu (Position Status)

UTC: 2021-04-08 11:22 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°2	9.292E GNSS Status	lin.	
Time of Position COG SOG Accuracy Satellites In Use	2021-04	4-08 11:22 000.0° 0.0 knots < 0.8 m 17	Position Status: MENU -> System -> Position Status (lower view)

Figure 282: System submenu (Position Status)

NOTE: The GNSS Status window shows the GNSS receiver status (in Automatic GNSS mode). The Manual Position input will not be shown in the GNSS Status window. The GNSS Status (Automatic GNSS) integrity states are further described and illustrated in *App. G - GNSS Receiver Integrity States (Automatic GNSS) on page 255*.

LRIT Status

The LRIT Status provides the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system with information about the current LRIT configuration. The LRIT Application Service Provider and the Reporting interval is listed, as seen on Figure 283. LRIT may be configured by the master of the ship or the ASP via the web server, see *Web server*, *LRIT* on page 200.

LS / Fulcrum
6 hours

Figure 283: System submenu (LRIT Status)
Subscription

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports General Calling (priority = Routine) also mentioned as Voice Calling. The Voice Service must be activated with the Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP) in order to be available as a service for the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The Subscription status will provide the user with information whether the Voice and Data Services are activated or not.

NOTE: The Voice Service must be activated with the Iridium GMDSS Service Provider (SP). in order to be available as a service for the LT-4200S GMDSS system.

UTC: 2024-11-08 08:12 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.290E Subscription	llı.	
Voice Service Data Service IMT Service	Subscribed Subscribed Subscribed	Subscription: MENU -> System -> Subscription
Details		

Figure 284: System submenu

By pressing the 'Details' softkey it is possible to see the MSISDN numbers of the subscribed voicelines. As seen on Figure 285 below.

•	UTC: 2024- POSN: 55°49	11-08 08:13 .153N 012°29.290E			llı.
		Voice Service			
	Line 1	Safety	881	6727(00041
	Line 2	Postpaid	881	67713	35670
	Line 3	Postpaid	881	67713	35647

Figure 285: Voice Service

System Info

The System Info provides details about the LT-4200S GMDSS system software and hardware. In addition, the following numbers are available: MSISDN (~satellite phone number), IMEI (~mobile equipment number), and ICCID (~SIM card number). The System Info is illustrated in Figure 286 and in Figure 287.



Figure 286: System Submenu (System Info)

UTC: 2024-11-26 14:10 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°) 29.289E	lin.	
	System Info		
Unit Informatio	n		System Info:
MSISDN	88167	72700057	MENU -> System -> System
IMEI	30000800	50329410	Info
ICCID	898816972700	00001019	(lower view)
Certificates			,
	Details		

Figure 287: System submenu (System Info)

To review information about configured units enter the Unit Information submenu. All configured units in the system will be displayed. The Unit information submenu is seen on Figure 288. By pressing the 'Details' Soft key, more information is available, see Figure 288 to Figure 291.



Figure 288: System submenu (System Info-> Unit Info)

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:18 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.288E	lh.
Unit Information	
LT-3140S IU	
LT-3150S AP #1	
LT-3150S AP #2	
LT-3150S AP #3	
LT-3160S PA	
Details	

Unit Info: MENU -> System -> System Info-> Unit Info (lower view)

Figure 289: System submenu (System Info-> Unit Info)

UTC: 2024-11-26 14:11 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.289E	.ul
LT-4210S CU	
Unit Number	LT-4210S
Unit Name	Control Unit
Part Number	51-103118
Serial Number	01080116
SW Part Number	71-103119

Information about the LT-4210S CU (Top view)

Figure 290: System submenu (Unit Info-> LT-4210S CU)

UTC: 2024-11-26 14:11 POSN: 55°49.154N 012°29.289E	ltı.
LT-4210S CU	
Part Number	51-103118
Serial Number	01080116
SW Part Number	71-103119
SW Version	1.00R
SW Build Number	0007

Information about the LT-4210S CU (Bottom view)

Figure 291: System submenu (Unit Info -> LT-4210S CU)

NOTE: The LT-3140S IU will only be present in the Unit Info submenu if an LT-3140S Interface Unit is configured for the system.

Certificates

LT-4200S GMDSS System certificates can be found by entering the 'Certificates' submenu. This is seen on Figure 292.



Figure 292: System submenu (System Info-> Certificates)

Power Supply

The Power Supply provides details about the DC input voltage on the LT-4210S Control Unit, LT-4230 Antenna Unit and LT-3140S IU. The output current is also displayed for the LT-4210S Control Unit.

UTC: 2024-09-11 08:20 POSN: 55°49.153N 012°29.287E	الد.
Power Supply	
CU Input Voltage	23.9 V
CU Output Current	0.77 A
AU Input Voltage	23.6 V
IU Input Voltage	23.9 V

Power Supply: MENU -> System -> Power Supply

Figure 293: System submenu (Power Supply)

NOTE: IU Input Power is only present if an LT 3140S Interface Unit has been configured for the system.

Bridge Alert Management (BAM)

Bridge Alert Management (BAM) is the IMO defined overall concept for the harmonized management, distribution, handling and presentation of alerts on the bridge, to enable the bridge team to devote full attention to the safe operation of the ship and to immediately identify any alert situation requiring action to maintain the safe operation of the ship. The LT-4210S GMDSS system implements the BAM concept in compliance with the relevant standards (IEC 62923-1 and IEC 62923-2 Bridge Alert Management).

BAM status

The LT-4200S GMDSS system continuously monitor for fault conditions (e.g. no satellite signal) and other events (e.g. received distress communication) that requires the attention of the bridge team and raises relevant alerts. The user can, at any time, check for the presence of alerts without performing any action: if there are one or more active alerts, a BAM icon representing the alert with the highest priority is shown in the status bar (see Figure 294). The exact icon shown depends on the priority and state of the alert with the highest priority (see Table 40 on page 174). It is not possible to hide or suppress the BAM icon in the status bar.



```
Figure 294: LT-4210S Control Unit (BAM status)
```

<u>Alert list</u>

Once the user has become aware an alert has been raised, the user can navigate to the alert list (MENU -> System -> BAM Alerts) to find further information about the alert conditions.

NOTE: For quick access to the alert list, long press $(\geq 1 \text{ s})$ the MENU button at any time.



If MSI or a Safety Message is responsible for the BAM Alert, pressing the soft key 'Review' will direct the user to the specific MSI or Safety Message.

Figure 295: LT-4210S Control Unit (BAM Alert list)

See *App. B* - *Bridge Alert Management (BAM)* on page 234 for the full list of alerts that can be raised by the LT-4200S GMDSS system.

Alert priority and state

The *priority* of an alert indicates its severity. The BAM concept defines 4 priorities: Emergency Alarm, Alarm, Warning and Caution. The LT-4200S GMSDS system can raise alerts of the following priorities:

- **Warning**: Condition requiring immediate attention, but no immediate action by the bridge team. Warnings are presented for precautionary reasons to make the bridge team aware of changed conditions which are not immediately hazardous but may become so if no action is taken.
- **Caution**: Lowest priority of an alert. Awareness of a condition which does not warrant an alarm or warning condition, but still requires attention out of the ordinary consideration of the situation or of given information.

The shape and color of the BAM icon indicates the priority of the alert and the symbol inside indicates its state as per Table 40 below.

BAM Alert Icons, Priority and Stat				
Priority	lcon	State	Condition	Audible signal
	I	Active – unacknowledged	Alert condition present. Alert not acknowledged.	Yes
	¥	Active – silenced	Alert condition present. Alert not acknowledged, but audible signal has been silenced by the operator.	No
Warning	!	Active – acknowledged	Alert condition present. Alert acknowledged by the operator.	No
warning	→	Active – responsibility transferred	Alert condition present. A function of the BAM compliant equipment with additional system knowledge has taken over.	No
	~	Rectified – unacknowledged	Alert condition rectified. Alert still unacknowledged.	No
	None	Normal	No alert condition present.	No
Caution	!	Active	Alert condition present.	No
	None	Normal	No alert condition present.	No

Table 40: BAM Alert Icons, Priority and State

Temporary silence

Active unacknowledged alerts cause a short but periodically repeated audible signal. To temporarily silence all alerts (and thus the audible signal), press the "Silence All" soft key. The temporary silence period expires after 30 s, after which active silenced alerts become active unacknowledged alerts again, causing the audible signal to resume.



Figure 296: LT-4210S Control Unit (BAM Alerts)

NOTE: Active unacknowledged alerts cause a short but periodically repeated audible signal, which can be temporary silenced (for 30 s) by pressing the soft key 'Silence All'. This temporary silence has been illustrated in Figure 296. In this example, the active unacknowledged BAM alert can be cleared when the distress alert relay message has been read in the MSI Messages (e.g. by pressing the soft key 'Review').

Alert acknowledgement

Alerts of priority warning must be acknowledged by the user. To acknowledge an alert, press the "ACK Alert" soft key.

Some alerts cannot be acknowledged by the user, in which case the "ACK Alert" soft key will be absent. This applies to alerts for which the alert text and alert description is not enough for decision support.

When an alert is both acknowledged and rectified it disappears from the alert list. Cautions cannot be acknowledged and thus disappear as soon as they are rectified.

Aggregation

The BAM concept defines aggregation as a means for an alert source to combine multiple individual alerts of the same kind into a single aggregated header alert to reduce the risk that the number of individual alerts obscures the display of equally important additional alerts, for example due to the active alert list length exceeding the maximum display capability of the alert source UI.

NOTE: The LT-4200S GMDSS system currently does not define any alerts that can be aggregated.

Responsibility transfer

The BAM concept defines the Central Alert Management (CAM) system as equipment used for centralizing management, handling, and presentation of alerts on the bridge. A CAM system may be a standalone system or combined with other equipment, for example in the case of an Integrated Navigation System (INS).

A CAM system connects to multiple alert sources (such as the LT-4200S GMDSS system) in order to manage and present their alerts on the CAM UI. An alert will thus be presented in the alert list of both the alert source and the CAM system.

To reduce the number of high-priority audible alerts for one situation that requires attention, if the CAM system has additional knowledge regarding an alert situation, which caused the LT-4200S GMDSS system to raise an alert, the CAM system may apply responsibility transfer and raise a new alert with, if practicable, a lower priority.

- **NOTE**: Alerts of priority caution are not audible and therefore cannot have their responsibility transferred.
- **NOTE**: The LT-4200S GMDSS will reject the request for responsibility transfer if no HBT sentence (indicating good status) has been received from the CAM system within the last 90 s.

Time synchronization

The LT-4200S GMDSS system can supply the UTC time of alert state changes to the CAM system due to the built-in GNSS receiver.

NOTE: If the alert state change occurs before the built-in GNSS receiver has obtained the UTC time or in case of GNSS receiver malfunctioning, the LT-4200S GMDSS system will not supply the UTC time.

Serial Interface (RS-422)

GNSS sentences

The LT-4200S GMDSS system support outputting of GNSS sentences encoded as NMEA 0183 via an RS-422 interface from the LT-4200S GMDSS system, as illustrated in Figure 297. The LT-4200S GMDSS system has a built-in GNSS receiver in the LT-4230 Antenna Unit.



Figure 297: GNSS sentences

Table 41 presents the supported GNSS sentences by the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The configuration of the GNSS sentences are illustrated and described in *GNSS*, *BAM and MSI* on page 223.

GNSS Sentences			
Sentence	Baud Rate		
	4.800	9.600	38.400
DTM	Х	Х	Х
GBS	-	-	Х
GGA	Х	Х	Х
GLL	Х	Х	Х
GNS	-	-	Х
GRS	-	-	Х
GSA	Х	Х	Х
GST	-	-	Х
GSV	-	-	Х
RMC	Х	Х	Х
VTG	Х	Х	Х
ZDA	Х	Х	Х

Table 41: GNSS sentences

IMPORTANT: The GNSS receiver of the LT-4200S GMDSS system is not certified according to IMO performance standards for GNSS receivers. The LT-4200S GMDSS system shall not be connected to equipment where the GNSS receiver interface must be certified.

The GNSS sentences and decoding of these are further documented in *App. D - GNSS sentences on page 249*.

BAM sentences

The LT-4200S GMDSS system support connection to an external Central Alert Management (CAM) system via an RS-422 interface from the LT-4200S GMDSS system, as illustrated in Figure 298. The CAM system can receive BAM information (e.g. warning and cautions) from the bridge equipment and centralize and present this information to the user, which can be acknowledged to the BAM equipment (here the LT-4200S GMDSS system).



Figure 298: CAM/BAM system

Table 42 presents the supported BAM sentences by the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The configuration of the BAM sentences are illustrated and described in *GNSS, BAM and MSI* on page 223.

Sentences Received by SES			
Sentence	Name	Comment	
ACN	Alert Command	Alert command for	
		instance acknowledge	
HBT	Heartbeat	Support reliable alert	
		related communication	
Sentences Transmitted by SES			
Sentence	Name	Comment	
ARC, ALC, ALF	Alert information		

Table 42: BAM sentences

- **NOTE:** The BAM sentences can be configured to 4.800, 9.600 and 38.400 Baud rate
- **NOTE**: The encoding of BAM sentences is defined in IEC 61162-1, the encoding is similar to NMEA 0183.

The BAM sentences and decoding of these are further documented in App. E - BAM sentences on page 251.

MSI sentences

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports connection to an external ECDIS system via an RS-422 interface from the LT-4200S GMDSS system, as illustrated in Figure 299. The MSI sentences are transmitted from the LT-4200S GMDSS system as 'information only'. The MSI messages transmitted from the Iridium GMDSS System (IGS) must always be read via the LT-4210S Control Unit UI display (MSI messages cannot be marked/acknowledged via the external ECDIS system receiving these MSI messages).



Figure 299: MSI sentences

Table 43 presents the supported MSI sentences by the LT-4200S GMDSS system. The configuration of the MSI sentences are illustrated and described in *GNSS, BAM and MSI* on page 223.

Sentences Transmitted by the SES		
Sentence Name Comment		
SM1, SM2, SM3, Maritime Safety		
SM4, SMB, SMV Information (MSI)		
Table 12, NACL souther and		

Table 43: MSI sentences

NOTE: The encoding of MSI sentences is defined in the IEC-61097-16 (Edition 1.0 2019-07) standard, the encoding is similar to NMEA 0183.

The MSI sentences and decoding of these are further documented in APP. F - MSI sentences on page 253.

NMEA 0183 over UDP

The LT-4200S system is supporting transmission of NMEA 0183 sentences (GNSS position information) via the LAN interface. The supported protocol is UDP (only broadcast).



Figure 300: NMEA 0183 over UDP (broadcast)

IMPORTANT: This interface is not certified and is not compliant with the IEC 61162 series of standards.

The IP destination address will always be the local broadcast address of the LAN. I.e., if the configured LAN network address/mask is 192.168.1.0/24 the destination address will be 192.168.1.255.

The UDP destination port is user configurable, see Table 44.

UDP broadcast Port Configuration		
Interface Port Number		
LAN 1 to 65535		

Table 44: UDP Broadcast Port Configuration

The configuration of the NMEA 0183 over UDP is illustrated in section *GNSS, BAM and MSI* on page 223. The Talker ID of the NMEA 0183 sentences can be changed by changing the configuration of the GNSS Receiver.

NOTE: Currently it is only possible to send NMEA 0183 sentences (GNSS position information) on one interface at a time. I.e., selecting CU LAN will disable GNSS on the RS-422 interface and vice versa.

GMDSS Printers

The LT-4200S GMDSS system support connection of an external GMDSS printer. The GMDSS printer must be connected via the LT-3140S interface Unit and use the proprietary LT-3160S Printer Adapter from Lars Thrane A/S. The LT-3160S Printer Adapter is connecting to the GMDSS printer via a Centronics interface, 36 pins (IEEE Std 1284-2000, 1284-B receptacle connector). The LT-3160S Printer Adapter is connected to the LT-3140S Interface Unit, using the interface marked 'Printer'. The LT-3160S Printer Adapter is powered from the LT-3140S Interface Unit.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system can print the International Reference Alphabet (IRA) character set (also known as IA5 or T.50).



Figure 301: Connect a GMDSS Printer

The GMDSS printer will be detected when running the Installation Wizard, see *Installation Wizard* on page 63. If the GMDSS printer is added after completion of the Installation Wizard, then the Service Wizard will detect the GMDSS printer and complete the setup.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is supporting the GMDSS printers listed in Table 45.

GMDSS Printers					
Manufacturer Model No.					
Furuno	PP-520				
JRC	NKG-900				
Cobham / SAILOR H1252B/TT-3608A					

Table 45: GMDSS Printers Supported

- **NOTE**: The LT-4200S GMDSS system will generate a BAM alert, if the GMDSS printer is running out of paper, see BAM alerts in *App. B Bridge Alert Management (BAM)* on page 234.
- **NOTE**: Accordingly, to the new GMDSS standard IEC 61097-16, it is no longer a requirement to have a GMDSS printer as part of the GMDSS Satcom installation.

Ship Security Alert System (SSAS)

The LT-4200S GMDSS System is supporting SSAS functionality and is compliant with the IMO requirements for SOLAS vessels. This section will in details describe the SSAS system architecture and functionality.

This manual describes the following SSAS details:

- Installation of the SSAS Alert and Test buttons, see SSAS Alert & Test Buttons on page 25
- Wiring and button layout, see SSAS (SSAS Alarm 1 to 3 & SSAS Test) on page 43
- SSAS functionality (*this section*)
- Web server configuration of SSAS, see SSAS on page 201

A high-level SSAS system architecture overview is available in Figure 302. The illustration shows the LT-4200S GMDSS System units, which must be present to offer the SSAS functionality. The recipient options are described in *Recipients* on page 183. All configuration options are performed via the built-in web server, see *SSAS* on page 201.

System Setup

Figure 302 illustrates the LT-4200S GMDSS System with 3 x SSAS Alert buttons and 1 x SSAS Test button connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit via the LT-3140S Interface Unit.



Figure 302: SSAS System Setup (end-to-end)

The SSAS Alert button (incl. 50m cable) and SSAS Test button (incl. 50m cable) can be ordered separately or as a SSAS Kit, where the LT-3140S Interface Unit is included. For SSAS ordering details, see *SSAS parts* on page 4.

Activation of SSAS Alert button(s) or SSAS Test button will trigger the transmission of covert messages, which will be sent to the recipients configured via the built-in web server. The recipient configuration options are described in *Recipients* on page 183. Activating of the SSAS Alert and SSAS Test are described in *Activation of Alert and Test* on page 184.

Recipients

This section describes the configuration options of the recipients for the SSAS Alert and SSAS Test messages. As illustrated in Figure 303 the recipients for SSAS can be configured to the following options:

- SSAS Provider
- E-mail
- SMS

It is possible to configure up to six recipients. The recipient configuration options are listed in the web server configuration of SSAS, see *SSAS* on page 201.



Figure 303: SSAS Recipients (E-mail, SMS, and SSAS Provider)

The SSAS Providers option will add Privacy, Link Monitoring, and Acknowledgement between Iridium and the SSAS Provider. The SSAS Provider recipient configuration option requires a subscription directly with the SSAS Provider to receive the SSAS Alert and SSAS Test messages. The end customer must contact the SSAS Provider if the SSAS Provider option is required and configured.

Activation of Alert and Test

This section will explain how to activate an SSAS Alert and SSAS Test. The web server configuration will determine which SSAS recipients will receive the SSAS Alert and SSAS Test messages. For further details of the SSAS configuration, see web server configuration *SSAS* on page 201.

NOTE:The SSAS Alert button (red) will when clicked be set in the activate position. To release the
SSAS Alert button (red) from the active position, the SSAS Alert button (red) must be
clicked again. The SSAS Test button (green) must be kept pushed manually to stay in the
active position. A cover will protect both SSAS buttons for a faulty activation.

Activate SSAS Alert

The following procedure must be followed to activate the SSAS Alert:

- 1. Lift the transparent lid of the (red) SSAS Alert Buttons
- 2. Press and activate at least one of the SSAS Alert buttons (red)
- 3. After 30 seconds, the SSAS Alert message will be sent to all the SSAS Alert recipients
- 4. An updated SSAS Alert message will be sent to all the SSAS Alert recipients after 30 minutes (default value). This procedure will continue until the SSAS Alert has been cancelled

Cancel SSAS Alert

The following procedure must be followed to cancel an active SSAS Alert:

- 5. Release all pressed SSAS Alert buttons (red) to cancel the SSAS Alert
- 6. An SSAS Cancel message will be sent to all the SSAS Alert recipients

Activate SSAS Test

The following procedure must be followed to activate an SSAS Test:

- 1. Lift the transparent lid of the (green) SSSAS Test Button
- 2. Press and hold the SSAS Test button (green)
- While the SSAS Test button (green) is pressed, activate at least one SSAS Alert button (red). Upon entering SSAS Test mode, the SSAS Test button (green) will start flashing (on/off in a 250ms pattern)
- 4. Keep the SSAS Test button (green) pressed in. After 30 seconds the SSAS Test button (green) will start flashing faster (on/off in a 100ms pattern). This flashing indicates that the SSAS Test button (green) no longer needs to be kept pressed and that an SSAS Test message is being sent to the SSAS Test recipients





Exit SSAS Test

The following procedure must be followed to exit the SSAS Test mode:

5. Release all pressed SSAS Alert buttons (red) to cancel the SSAS Test

Interpretation of the SSAS Test button light

Table 46 shows the interpretation of the SSAS Test button light (LED).

SSAS Test button light state/pattern				
Light state Description				
Off	SSAS is not functional -> check system and configuration			
On	SSAS ready			
250ms flashing (on/off)	SSAS Test mode activated			
100ms flashing (on/off) SSAS Test messages is being sent				

Table 46: SSAS Test button (green) lightning pattern

The following requirements must be fulfilled for the SSAS Test button to lit:

- The LT-4210S Control Unit must contain an activated GMDSS SIM card
- LT-3140S Interface Unit must be connected to the LT-4210S Control Unit
- The LT-4200S GMDSS system must be registered on the Iridium Network
- Installation and Service Wizard must be completed .
- SSAS functionality must be enabled via the web server
- At least one SSAS recipient must be configured •
- A minimum of two SSAS Alert buttons must be functional •

NOTE: In case the SSAS Test button LED is not turned on (lit), please check the SSAS web server configuration for any error information. The SSAS Test button LED may be damaged, this may be indicated on the SSAS configuration webserver. Due to covert operation SSAS information cannot be displayed in the LT-4210S Control Unit.

Layout of messages

Examples on the SSAS Alert, SSAS Cancel, and SSAS Test messages sent as E-mail are illustrated in Figure 304.

SSAS ALERT

-no-reply@msg.iridium.com Til: Kristoffer Thrane Lundstedt (KTL)

Ν

Message Type: SSAS Alert Vessel Name: GW GMDSS CERTUS TEST 1 MMSI: 999999800 IMO: 9999800 UTC: 2024-11-21 14:21:18 POSN: 55° 49.15'N 012° 29.29'E COG: 182 SOG: 0.0 kn CS: test SIM

SSAS ALERT Cancel

-no-reply@msg.iridium.com Ν Til: Kristoffer Thrane Lundstedt (KTL)

Message Type: SSAS Alert Cancellation Vessel Name: GW GMDSS CERTUS TEST 1 MMSI: 999999800 IMO: 9999800 UTC: 2024-11-21 14:30:00 POSN: 55° 49.15'N 012° 29.29'E COG: 182 SOG: 0.0 kn CS: test SIM

Figure 304: Layout of SSAS messages

SSAS TEST



-no-reply@msg.iridium.com

Til: Kristoffer Thrane Lundstedt (KTL)

Message Type: SSAS Test Vessel Name: GW GMDSS CERTUS TEST 1 MMSI: 999999800 IMO: 9999800 UTC: 2024-11-25 12:13:53 POSN: 55° 49.15'N 012° 29.29'E COG: 154 SOG: 0.0 kn CS: test SIM

- NOTE:Using SMS as destination may split up the messages into 2 separate messages: SMS (1/2)and SMS (2/2) this is clearly indicated in the received SMS' (the MMSI number is listed in
both SMS (1/2) and in SMS (2/2) to show their relationship.
- **NOTE**: The SSAS Cancel message is only sent when SSAS Alert is deactivated/released.

Service and cost

The SSAS, LRIT and Commercial Tracking functionalities are only operational if activated through the subscription handled by the Service Provider or the ASP. All service of the subscribed functions of the LT-4200S GMDSS System is done through the Service Provider or the ASP.

Long Range Identification and Tracking (LRIT)

The LT-4200S GMDSS System is supporting LRIT functionality. This section will in details describe the LRIT functionality.

Long Range Identification and Tracking of ships is used to accurately broadcast the position of the vessel to the Application Service Provider (ASP). The possible ASP's are listed in Table 47 below. For subscription information please contact Pole star or Lars Thrane A/S. Additional ASP's will be available with time.

LRIT Application Service Providers (ASP)					
Pole star					

For the LRIT service to be enabled requires that the LT-4200S GMDSS System has an active subscription. LRIT can be activated for the LT-4200S GMDSS system - Basic, the LT-3140S Interface Unit is not required for the LRIT service. When the LRIT service is activated, the name of the ASP will be presented in MENU -> System -> LRIT Status.

The LRIT service is completely controlled by the ASP and the LRIT service can only be *activated* and *deactivated* from remote by the ASP: The ASP can dynamically change the reporting interval of the LRIT service. When the ship is undergoing repairs, modifications, conversions in dry-dock, in port, or is laid up for a long period, the user may reduce or temporarily disable the reporting interval through the built-in web server, as described in *Web server, LRIT* on page 200.

NOTE: IEC 62729 states that the distribution of LRIT must only cease under exceptional circumstances and the broadcast frequency must only be configured by the master of the ship or the ASP. It is possible to configure the LRIT update interval, but this should only be done under *exceptional circumstances*.

Web server

The LT-4210S Control Unit has a built-in webserver, which can be accessed from the Ethernet (RJ45) interface from the back side of the control unit or from a connected LT-3140S Interface Unit through Ethernet.. A PC must be connected to the control unit or the Interface Unit, either directly by connecting an Ethernet cable between a PC and the LT-4210S Control Unit, LT-3140S Interface Unit or by connecting the LT-4210S Control Unit to a Local Area Network (LAN), to where the PC is connected.

NOTE:

The IP address allocated to the LT-4210S Control Unit, is shown in the GUI (Menu -> System -> Network: IP Address).

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:14:57 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.289E	.ali		
Dashboard	System Information	System Units		
Messages v	System Number LT-4200S Software Version 1.00R-0007 IMEI 300008060329410 ICCID 898816972700001119	Number Name Status LT-4210S Control Unit Connected ✓ LT-4230 Antenna Unit Connected ✓		
Legal notice	Vessel Name GW GMDSS CERTUS TEST 1 Vessel IMO 9999800 Vessel MMSI 99999900 Vessel Call State ect \$1M	LT-3140S Interface Unit Connected LT-3150S Alarm Panel 1 Connected LT-3150S Alarm Panel 2 Connected LT-3150S Alarm Panel 3 Connected V		
Disable login timeout	Vessel Flag AIA	LT-3160S Printer Adapter Connected Y		
	Outgoing Lines	Satellite Data Services		
	Line Type Number Status 1 Safety Voice 881672700057 Idle 2 Postpaid 881677102251 Idle 3 Postpaid 881677100023 Idle	Name Status Rx Tx Background IP Down 0.000 kB 0.000 kB Local Interfaces Interface Firewall Interface Protocol Service Firewall LAN IP Background IP Enabled Stopped		
	Number Caller ID Status 1000 Handset Idle			
	DAWI No active alerts			

Figure 305: Web server (System dashboard)

The functionality of all web pages is described in further detail in the following sections. Some of the sections will refers to other sections in this User & Installation Manual, e.g. hardware interfaces.

NOTE: All web pages functionality will be described in detail for the LT-4200S GMDSS system. It is the intention that the web pages should be used during the installation and configuration of the system. During normal operation of the system, it shouldn't be necessary to access the web pages.

Accessing the built-in web server

To access the built-in web server of the LT-4200S system, please complete the following steps:

- 1. Connect the LT-4210S Control Unit directly to a PC using an Ethernet cable or connect the LT-4210S Control Unit to a Local Area Network (LAN), where a PC is connected.
- Identify the IP address that is assigned to the LT-4210S Control Unit. The IP address can be read out from the display (MENU -> System -> Network: IP Address). The IP address is valid if the 'Link Status' is showing 'Up'. The IP address is assigned dynamically by a DHCP server.
- 3. From the PC, start a browser (e.g. Microsoft Edge, Explorer, Chrome, etc.) and type in the IP address, which was identified in the LT-4210S Control Unit (e.g. 10.1.10.39).
- 4. The browser might show you a warning about an invalid web server certificate, as illustrated in Figure 306. Make sure, that you have typed in the correct IP address.
- 5. Press 'Details' and you will be presented for an extended page view (including a link), which will direct you to the LT-4200S system dashboard 'Go on to the webpage (Not recommended)'.
- 6. You will now see the LT-4200S system dashboard.



Figure 306: Accessing the built-in web server ("This site is not secure").

Dashboard

The dashboard is showing details about the main units, which forms the satcom system: the LT-4210S Control Unit, LT-4230 Antenna Unit, LT-3140S Interface Unit, LT-3150S Alarm Panel, and LT-3160S Printer Adapter. If the units are connected correctly to the control unit, then the units will be visible on the web server dashboard, as illustrated in Figure 307. Otherwise, only the control unit will be visible. For each unit, the following information will be available: unit number, unit name, unit part number, unit serial number, and software version. The antenna unit, interface unit, alarm panels, and printer adapter will automatically be updated with the software installed in the control unit.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:14:57 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.289E	.al
Dashboard	System Information	System Units
Messages v	System Number LT-4200S	Number Name Status
Configuration ~	Software Version 1.00R-0007 IMEI 300008060329410	LT-4210S Control Unit Connected ♥ LT-4230 Antenna Unit Connected ♥
Maintenance ~	ICCID 8988169727000001019 Vessel Name GW GMDSS CERTUS TEST 1	LT-3140S Interface Unit Connected ✓
Legal notice	Vessel IMO 9999800	LT-3150S Alarm Panel 2 Connected ♥
Log out	Vessel Call Sign test SIM	LT-3150S Alarm Panel 3 Connected LT-3160S Printer Adapter Connected
Disable login timeout	Vessel Flag AIA	
	Telephony	Data
	Outgoing Lines	Satellite Data Services
	Line Type Number Status	Name Status Rx Tx
	1 Safety Voice 881672700057 Idle	Background IP Down 0.000 kB 0.000 kB
	2 Postpaid 881677102251 Idle 3 Postpaid 881677100023 Idle	Local Interfaces
	Phones	Interface Protocol Service Firewall Status
	Number Caller ID Status	LAN IP Background IP Enabled Stopped 🕨
	1000 Handset Idle	
	BAM	
	No active alerts	

Figure 307: Web server (System dashboard)

The web server has the following webpages:

- Dashboard
- Messages (contains subpages)
- Configuration (contains subpages)
- Maintenance (contains subpages)
- Legal notice
- Log out
- Disable login timeout

Messages

MSI

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is supporting Maritime Safety Information (MSI), which is described in *Maritime Safety Information (MSI)* on page 90. The LT-4200S GMDSS system is offering 'read-only' access of the MSI messages via the web server as illustrated in Figure 308. By clicking on the individual MSI messages the message will expand and the user can read the content of the message.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 10 POSN: 55	Sep 202 949.153N	4 07:01:07 I 12°29.291E						
Dashboard									
Messages ^	GMDSS								
MSI	Maritime	Safety In	formation						
Safety Messages		No.	Priority	Class	Area	Cancel By	Advisory ID		
Configuration ~	\bowtie	568	SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-10 08:25	66df59ad_7b78		
Maintenance ~	\bowtie	567	SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-09 20:25	66deb0ed_4a22		
Legal notice	\bowtie	566	SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-09-16 04:59	66de66ce_af52		
Log out	\bowtie	565	SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-09 08:25	66de0828_8cc4		
Disable login timeout	\bowtie	564	SAFETY	NAV	2	2024-10-20 16:30	66ddbda5_34d9		
	\bowtie	563	SAFETY	NAV	2	2024-09-15 16:00	66ddc317_64c1		
	\bowtie	562	SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-08 20:25	66dd5f74_f7e9		
	\bowtie	561	SAFETY	NAV	2	2024-10-19 21:29	66dcc521_4fc2		
	\bowtie	560	SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-08 08:25	66dcb6ae_706a		
	\bowtie	559	SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-07 20:25	66dc0dee_42da		
	X	558	SAFETY	MET	1	2024-09-07 08:25	66db6529_77db		

Figure 308: Web server (Maritime Safety Information (MSI))

NOTE: The MSI messages 'read-only' access on the web server is for information only and will list all received MSI messages. It is a requirement that the user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system reads and understand all MSI messages received from the Iridium GMDSS System. The Bridge Alert Management (BAM) supported in the LT-4200S GMDSS system will clearly show (e.g. in the status bar), if there are unread MSI messages, which must be read.

It is possible to create a MSI login to the web server, which only gives permissions to read MSI messages. The MSI login access is described in *Authentication* on page 196.

Safety Messages

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is offering 'list-only' access of the incoming Safety Messages via the web server as illustrated in Figure 309Figure 308. By clicking on the individual Safety Messages the message will expand, but the user cannot read the content of the message of the Web Server. The intent of the menu is to list the received Safety Messages, but not interact with them.

LT-4200S System UTC: 10 Sep 2024 07:01:38 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.291E								
Dashboard								
Messages ^	GMDSS							
MSI	Safety mes	sages						
Safety Messages	MSGID	ADVID	Date	Priority	Peer	Status		
Configuration ~	71	66b4c0ed_8e33	2024-08-08 13:02	SAFETY	11103	READ		
Maintenance ~	70	66b49d8e_8e33	2024-08-08 10:31	SAFETY	11103	READ		
	69	66b472aa_8e33	2024-08-08 07:32	SAFETY	11103	READ		
Legal notice	68	66b0c8d7_8e30	2024-08-05 12:51	SAFETY	11103	READ		
Log out	66	66b084d5	2024-08-05 07:52	URGENCY	111101	SENT		
Disable login timeout	67	66b084d5	2024-08-05 07:52	SAFETY	111101	SENT		
	62	66acdb7a	2024-08-02 13:13	URGENCY	111101	SENT		
	63	66acdb7b	2024-08-02 13:13	SAFETY	111101	SENT		
	57	664f047b	2024-05-23 08:55	URGENCY	111101	SENT		
	58	664f047b	2024-05-23 08:55	SAFETY	111101	SENT		
	53	664de828	2024-05-22 12:42	URGENCY	111101	SENT		
	54	664de828	2024-05-22 12:42	SAFETY	111101	SENT		
	49	664de579	2024-05-22 12:30	URGENCY	111101	SENT		

Figure 309: Web server (Safety Messages)

Configuration

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is initially configured and fully operational after the Installation Wizard has been completed. The Installation Wizard is described and illustrated in *Installation Wizard* on page 63. Additionally, the GMDSS settings can be configured via the GMDSS submenu, as described in *GMDSS Submenu* on page 104. In this section there will be a description of system settings, which are not covered by the Installation Wizard and the LT-4210S Control Unit display menu layout.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:15:52 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.289E	all.
Dashboard	System Information	System Units
Messages ~ Configuration ^ Authentication LRIT SSAS Network IP Data Telephony Contacts	System Number LT-4200S Software Version 1.00R-0007 IMEI 300008060329410 ICCID 8988169727000001019 Vessel Name GW GMDSS CERTUS TEST 1 Vessel IMO 9999800 Vessel Call Sign test SIM Vessel Flag AIA	NumberNameStatusLT-4210SControl UnitConnected~LT-4230Antenna UnitConnected~LT-3140SInterface UnitConnected~LT-3150SAlarm Panel 1Connected~LT-3150SAlarm Panel 2Connected~LT-3150SAlarm Panel 3Connected~LT-3160SPrinter AdapterConnected~
Tracking External I/O GNSS, BAM and MSI	Telephony Outgoing Lines	Data Satellite Data Services
Reset	Line Type Number Status	Name Status Rx Tx
Maintenance ~ Legal notice	1 Safety Voice 881672700057 Idle 2 Postpaid 881677102251 Idle 3 Postpaid 881677100023 Idle	Background IP Down 0.000 kB 0.000 kB Local Interfaces Interface Protocol Service Firewall Status
Log out Disable login timeout	Phones Number Caller ID Status 1000 Handset Idle	LAN IP Background IP Enabled Stopped D
	BAM No active alerts	

Figure 310: Web server (Configuration)

Under Configuration, the following webpages are available:

- Authentication
- LRIT
- SSAS
- Network
- IP Data
- Telephony
- Contacts
- Tracking
- External I/O
- GNSS, BAM and MSI
- Reset

Authentication

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports configuration of authentication on the web server.

The default password for the User = admin and Password = admin. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will always be delivered from Lars Thrane A/S with the default password configured.

NOTE: It is highly recommended that the installer of the LT-4200S GMDSS system changes the default password during the installation of the system, so that a random user on the network does not have access to the web server.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:16:34 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E	
Dashboard Messages ~ Configuration ^	Configuration - Change password	
Authentication LRIT SSAS	Old password New password	1-16 characters
Network IP Data Telephony Contacts	New password (repeat)	
Tracking External I/O GNSS, BAM and MSI Reset		
Maintenance v		
Legal notice Log out		
Disable login timeout		

Figure 311: Web server (Authentication)

If the authentication password is changed from default and forgotten, then the authentication password can be reset from the display (MENU -> Settings -> Reset Options: Reset Web Authentication). Remember to change the authentication password away from the default password, as soon as it has been possible to re-enter the web server. The Reset Web Authentication is further described and illustrated in *Settings* on page 157.

<u>MSI login</u>

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports configuration of a separate web server login for the purpose of reading MSI. Upon selecting the MSI profile, the operator is prompted to create a new password for logging in as the MSI user, this is displayed on Figure 312.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:17:02 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E
Dashboard	
Messages ~	Configuration - Authentication
Configuration ^	Change password
Authentication	
LRIT	
SSAS	New password 1-16 characters
Network	New password (repeat)
IP Data	Apply
Telephony	
Contacts	
Evternal I/O	
GNSS, BAM and MSI	
Reset	
Maintenance ~	
Legal notice	
Log out	
Disable login timeout	

Figure 312: Web server (MSI login)

LT-4200S System	UTC: POSN:	26 Nov 202	4 14:44:33				
MSI Log out	GN Marit	MDSS	formation				
Disable login timeout		No.	Priority	Class	Area	Cancel By	Advisory ID
		8	SAFETY	NAV	10+A	2025-01-03 11:12	66d991ed_9e27
		7	SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-12-02 04:59	6743f4ed_a0f3
		2	SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-11-29 09:59	674050cc_67fc
		3	SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-11-29 10:00	6745a8fa_c2b9
		4	SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-12-18 18:00	672b851b_dbc3
		5	SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-12-26 18:00	673617c0_1ce2
		6	SAFETY	NAV	1	2024-11-29 06:46	67458088_c602
		1	SAFETY	MET	1	2024-11-26 21:25	674593fc_64a7

Figure 313: Web server (MSI login)

When logging in using the MSI profile, only the MSI tab will be available. From here MSI can be read, this is displayed in Figure 313.

NOTE: It is recommended that the installer of the LT-4200S GMDSS system sets the MSI profile password during the installation of the system. It is highly recommended to keep the MSI profile password different from the admin and the User profile password.

<u>User login</u>

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports configuration of a separate web server login named User for the purpose of reading MSI. The User profile is also able to download the diagnostics file. The operator needs to login using the Admin profile to set a password for the User profile, this is displayed on Figure 314.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:17:27 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E
Dashboard	
Messages	Configuration - Authentication
Configuration	Change password
Authentication	Old password
LRII SSAS	New password 1-16 characters
Network	New password (repeat)
IP Data Telephony	Apply
Contacts	
External I/O	
GNSS, BAM and MSI	
Maintenance	×
Legal notice	
Log out	
Disable login timeout	

Figure 314: Web server (User login)

After setting the User profile password using the Admin profile, the User profile can be accessed. When logging in using the User profile, only some Web Server tabs will be available:

Messages: MSI

Configuration: Contacts

Maintenance: Diagnostics

This is displayed in Figure 315.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:18:35 POSN: 55 ² 49.154N 12 ² 29.291E	
Dashboard Messages ^ MSI Configuration ~	System Information System Number LT-4200S Software Version 1.00R-0007 IMEI 300008060329410 ICCID 8988169727000001019 Vessel Name Vessel Name	Number Name Status LT-4210S Control Unit Connected Y LT-4230 Antenna Unit Connected Y LT-3140S Interface Unit Connected Y
Legal notice Log out Disable login timeout	Vessel IMO Vessel MMSI Vessel Call Sign Vessel Flag	LI-3150S Alarm Panel 1 Connected LT-3150S Alarm Panel 2 Connected LT-3150S Alarm Panel 3 Connected LT-3160S Printer Adapter Connected
	Telephony Outgoing Lines Line Type Number Status	Data Satellite Data Services Name Status Rx Tx
	1 Safety Voice 881672700057 Idle 2 Postpaid 881677102251 Idle 3 Postpaid 881677100023 Idle Phones Idle Idle Idle	Background IP Down 0.000 kB 0.000 kB Local Interfaces Interface Protocol Service Firewall Status LAN IP Background IP Enabled Stopped F
	Number Caller ID Status 1000 Handset Idle BAM	
	No active alerts	

Figure 315: Web server (User login)

NOTE: It is recommended that the installer of the LT-4200S GMDSS system sets the User profile password during the installation of the system. It is highly recommended to keep the User profile password different from the admin, and the MSI profile password.

LRIT

The LT-4200S GMDSS System supports Long Range Tracking and Identification (LRIT). To activate the LRIT functionality please contact a certified Service Provider such as Pole Star. The web server configuration of LRIT is illustrated in Figure 317.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 10 Sep 2024 07:05:18 POSN: 55°49.152N 12°29.291E	
Dashboard		
Messages ~	Configuration -	LRIT
Configuration ^	Service Provider	lt-Irit-asp
Authentication	Next Report	10 Sep 2024 11:59:50 UTC
GMDSS	Latest Report	09 Sep 2024 23:59:50 UTC
SSAS Network	Update interval	Normal (6 hours)
IP Data		
Telephony	Apply Cancel	
Contacts		
Tracking		
GNSS and BAM		
Reset		
Maintenance ~		
Legal notice		
Log out		
Disable login timeout		

Figure 316: Web server (LRIT)

The LRIT update interval is configurable to the values listed in Table 48. The LRIT Update Interval can also be configured through Remote access. The reasoning for changing the update interval must be recorded as per IEC 62729.

LRIT Update Interval
Normal (6 hours)
Reduced (24 hours)
Disabled

Table 48: LRIT Update Interval

SSAS

The LT-4200S GMDSS System supports Ship Security Alert System (SSAS). To enable the SSAS functionality, the LT-4200S GMDSS System must include the LT-3140S Interface Unit, SSAS Alert buttons, and SSAS Test button. The web server configuration of SSAS is illustrated in Figure 317.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:21:47 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.288E		
Dashboard	Configuration	0040	
Messages v	Conliguration -	55A5	
Configuration ^	Enable		
Authentication LRIT SSAS Network	SSAS Status Test Status	Ready SSAS tested at 25 Nov 2024	12:14:01 UTC
IP Data Telephony	Test Procedure 💙		
Contacts Tracking External I/O	Buttons Enable Button Lo	ocation (optional)	
GNSS, BAM and MSI	🖾 Test 📃	ocation of button	
Maintenance ~	Alert1	ocation of button	
Legal notice	Alert2	ocation of button	
Log out	Alert3	ocation of button	
Disable login timeout	Recipients		
	Enable Priority Description (optional) Destination	on Alert Test
	1 SSAS Service	Provider	✓ ✓ ✓
	2 Description of	recipient -	▼ □ □
	3 Description of	recipient -	▶ □ □
	4 Description of	recipient -	✓ □ □
	5 Description of	recipient -	✓ □ □
	6 Description of	recipient -	✓ □ □
	General		,
	Alert update interval	30	10-60 minutes
	Supplementary Informatio	n	
Vessel Name		GW GWDSS CERTUS TEST	
	Vessel IMO	9999800	
	Vessel Call Sign	test SIM	
	Vessel flag	AIA	
	CSO Name	Name	(optional, required by some authorities)
	CSO phone number	Phone number	(optional, required by some authorities)
	Alternate CSO Name	Name	(optional, required by some authorities)
	Alternate CSO phone number	Phone number	, (optional, required by some authorities)
	Apply Cancel		

Figure 317: Web server (SSAS)

SSAS and Test Status information

The SSAS and Test Status information will clearly inform the user about the current state of the SSAS. The following information must be displayed for the SSAS to be fully operational and verified:

- SSAS Status Ready
- Test Status SSAS Tested at DD-MM-YYYY HH:MM:SS UTC
- **NOTE**: The SSAS functionality can be tested by sending the SSAS Alert or SSAS Test message. The activation of SSAS Alert and SSAS Test is described in *Activation of Alert and Test* on page 184.

IMPORTANT: The SSAS is fully operational, if the SSAS Test button (colored green) is constantly lit.

<u>Buttons</u>

The following SSAS buttons can be connected to the LT-4200S GMDSS System via the LT-3140S Interface Unit:

- 3 x SSAS Alert buttons
- 1 x SSAS Test button.

The SSAS Alert and Test buttons will be delivered with 50m cable attached to the button.

The LT-4200S GMDSS System will automatically detect whether a SSAS Alert and SSAS Test button is connected. The installer must enable the individual SSAS Alert and Test buttons.

Table 49 provides an overview of the SSAS button status information. If text is present for the specific button, then action is required to verify or resolve a potential problem, which may impact the SSAS functionality. In case <no text> is present, the SSAS Alert and Test buttons are fully functional.

SSAS Buttons Status Info			
Text	Description	Action	
<no text=""></no>	Everything ok	None	
Button not tested	Button must be tested by activating a SSAS Alert or SSAS Test	Required	
Button not detected	Incorrect wiring or damaged button	Required	
Available button not enabled	Button detected, but not enabled	Required	
Active button not enabled	Button detected (and activated), but not enabled	Required	
Button fault	Button cannot be detected and/or incorrect wiring	Required	

Table 49: SSAS Button status info

NOTE: It is an IMO requirement to have at least two activation points (SSAS Alert buttons), where one of these must be hidden on the navigational bridge. The SSAS Test button should be placed next to one of the SSAS Alert buttons for easy testing.

Recipients

Up to six recipients can be configured (priority 1 to 6). For each recipients the 'Destination' must be selected. The 'Destination' settings can be configured accordingly to the details listed in Table 50.

SSAS Recipients Destination		
Settings	Description	
Custom (E-mail)	Up to 64 characters	
Custom (SMS)	Up to 32 characters (including country code, e.g., +45 for Denmark)	
CLS / Fulcrum	LT Proprietary protocol	
Pole Star	LT Proprietary protocol	

Table 50: SSAS Recipients Destination

For each recipient it is possible to select SSAS Alert and/or SSAS Test message (marked: 'Alert' and 'Test'). For Priority 1 'Alert' is always enabled. The priority 1 recipient must be activated when using the SSAS functionality. When activating the SSAS Alert or SSAS Test, the recipients will be executed one by one in priority, until all recipients has been completed. The SSAS Alert and SSAS Test activation and messages are described in *Ship Security Alert System (SSAS)* on page 182.

NOTE: Check with the Flag or Classification authority what recipient requirements are mandatory for the specific vessel and installation.

Table 51 provides an overview of the SSAS recipients status information.

SSAS Recipients Status Info			
Text	Description	Action	
<no text=""></no>	Everything ok	None	
Sending	Alert, Cancel or Test message are being transmitted to recipient	None	
Alert and test are disabled	Alert and/or Test message must be enabled	Required	
Recipient not tested	The recipient must be tested by activating SSAS Alert or SSAS Test	Required	
Recipient not enabled	Destination applied, but the recipient is not enabled	Required	
Table 51: SSAS Recipients Status Info			

IMPORTANT: All SSAS recipients should be tested regularly. Make sure to inform SSAS recipient authorities before sending an SSAS Alert or SSAS Test messages.

NOTE: It is recommended that the user configures a minimum of two SSAS Recipients preferably with different destinations e.g., one with E-mail and one with SMS.

NOTE: If selecting the SSAS Provider, then you must contact the SSAS Provider and complete a test to verify end-to-end functionality. The number of SSAS Providers may change over time.
<u>General</u>

The Alert update interval is default set to 30 minutes. The Alert update interval can be configured in the interval from 10 to 60 minutes. The Alert update interval defines the dwell time until the recipients list (Priority 1 to 6) will be executed again and an updated SSAS Alert or SSAS Test message will be sent one-by-one to all the recipients. The SSAS Alert or SSAS Test message will continuously be transmitted with the Alert update interval until all SSAS Alert buttons are released.

Supplementary Information

The Supplementary information contains details, which are already known by the LT-4200S GMDSS System (received automatically via the GMDSS configuration file), as part of the activation of the GMDSS system. These details are the Vessel name, IMO no., MMSI no., and Call Sign. If the Call Sign is not received by the GMDSS configuration file, then it must be completed manually during the SSAS configuration.

The Chief Safety Officer (CSO) Name and Phone Number is optionally to complete. Some Flag or Classification authorities and shipping companies requires that the CSO Name and Phone Number are listed as part of the message.

The 'Supplementary Information' settings can be configured accordingly to the details listed in Table 52.

SSAS Recipient Supplementary Information					
Settings	Description				
Vessel Name	GMDSS config. File				
Vessel IMO	GMDSS config. File				
Vessel MMSI	GMDSS config. File				
Vessel Call Sign	GMDSS config. file or manual input (up to 7 characters)				
CSO Name	Manual input (up to 32 characters)				
CSO Phone Number	Manual input (up to 32 characters)				

Table 52: SSAS Recipients Supplementary Information

NOTE: Remember to manually fill out the Vessel Call Sign if this information has not been received automatically via the GMDSS configuration file (the GMDSS configuration file will be received automatically when completing the Installation Wizard). Also, complete the CSO Name and Phone Number, if required by the authorities or shipping company.

Network

The LT-4200S system is supporting the most common network configurations for Local Area Network (LAN). The LT-4200S system has one Ethernet (RJ45) interface, which is described in *Ethernet RJ45 (LAN)* on page 33.

The following network configuration modes will be described in this section:

- DHCP client
- DHCP server
- Static

The default network configuration mode for the Ethernet interface is DHCP client.

LT-4200S System	TC: 26 Nov 2024 14:23:06 OSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E	
Dashboard	Configuration - Network	
Messages ~		
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS DHCP Outgoing Firewall Port Forwarding Static Route PP	POE SDF
Authentication	Ethernet (LAN)	
LRIT		
SSAS		
IP Data	10.1.10.72	
Telephony	Netmask 255.255.255.0	
Contacts	Domain thrane.local	
Tracking		
External I/O	PPPoE	
GNSS, BAM and MSI	IP address 192.168.254.1	
Reset	Netmask 255 255 255 0	
Maintenance v	200.200.0	
Legal notice	Apply	
Log out		
Disable login timeout		

Figure 318: Web server - Network

- NOTE: In DHCP client mode, Link-local is supported, in order to connect another 'passive' IP-device (e.g. a PC) directly to the LT-4210S Control Unit. Expect the LT-4210S Control Unit to get the IP-address: 10.1.10.66
- **NOTE**: The IP-address of the LT-4210S Control Unit is always displayed in the UI (MENU -> System > Network), see details in *System* from page 164.



Figure 319: Web server - Network

If the LT-4200S system is connected to a local network as illustrated in Figure 319, where a DHCP server is already available, then the LT-4200S system must be configured to either DHCP client or Static mode. The Static mode can be used, if it is required that the IP-address of the LT-4210S Control Unit must not change.

The LT-4200S system has three reserved network ranges, which are documented in Table 53.

Reserved Network Ranges				
Reserved	Sub-nets			
Reserved External	192.168.255.0/24 - i.e. 192.168.255.0 netmask 255.255.255.0			
Reserved Internal	172.27.0.0/16 - i.e. 172.27.0.0 netmask 255.255.0.0,			
	172.30.0.0/16			

Table 53: Reserved Network Ranges

DHCP client

The DHCP client mode is the configuration of the LT-4210S Control Unit from the factory. The DHCP client mode must be used, if the IP network already has a DHCP server available.

DHCP Server

The DHCP server mode must be used when connecting the LT-4210S Control Unit directly to another IPdevice or local network, where no DHCP server is offered, and where it is required that a DHCP server is offered for assigning IP-addresses to network clients. The DHCP server mode setting is illustrated in Figure 320.

LT-4200S System UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:23:23 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E									
Dashboard Messages v	Configuration -		Port Forwarding	Static Route	PPPoE	SDF			
Configuration Authentication LRIT SSAS Network IP Data Telephony Contacts	Ethernet (LAN) Mode IP address Netmask DHCP server range	DHCP server ▼ 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0 192.168.1.100	192.168.1.200						
Tracking External I/O GNSS, BAM and MSI Reset	Note: if changes are made to DH	CP server parameters, this w	vill typically require a r	restart of clients	on the network	¢.			
Maintenance ~	IP address Netmask Apply	192.168.254.1 255.255.255.0							
Log out Disable login timeout									

Figure 320: Web server – Network (DHCP server mode)

- **NOTE**: A user scenario for configuration the DHCP server mode is when e.g., connecting IP-based communication devices: Analogue Phone Adapter, SIP Phones, or the RedPort Optimizer directly to the LT-4210S Control Unit via the Ethernet interface. Connecting an Analogue Phone Adapter is further described in *Analogue Phone Adapter* on page 144.
- **NOTE:** If the user changes DHCP server configuration all clients must be rebooted as changes does not apply automatically

<u>Static</u>

The Static mode must be used when the IP address of the LT-4210S Control Unit must never change. Typically used, if connecting the LT-4210S Control Unit to an IP network, where a DHCP server is already available, and where it is important that the IP address assigned for the LT-4210S Control Unit is never changed. The web server static setting is illustrated in Figure 321.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:23:40 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E
Dashboard	Configuration Notwark
Messages v	Conliguration - Network
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS DHCP Outgoing Firewall Port Forwarding Static Route PPPoE SDF
Authentication LRIT SSAS Network IP Data Telephony Contacts Tracking External I/O GNSS, BAM and MSI	Ethernet (LAN)ModeStaticIP address192.168.1.1Netmask255.255.255.0PPPoEIP address192.168.254.1Netmask255.255.0
Reset Maintenance ~	Apply
Legal notice	
Log out	
Disable login timeout	

Figure 321: Web server – Network (Static mode)

<u>DNS</u>

The LT-4200S system contains a caching recursive DNS server used to resolve names in the local domain. The system also contains two references to external DNS servers which are used to resolve names in the other domains. For configuration of the DNS servers see Figure 322.

NOTE: If the outgoing firewall is enabled the LT-4200S system will only allow domain names present in any firewall rules to be resolved externally. See Outgoing Firewall later in this section.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:23: POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.2	:55 289E				
Dashboard	0	. National				
Messages v	Configuratio	on - Network				
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS	DHCP Outgoing Firewall	Port Forwarding	Static Route	PPPoE	SDF
Authentication LRIT SSAS Network	The LT-4200S contains a The DNS server resolves r client names), while it is us in other domains.	caching recursive DNS server. names in the local domain (hostn ising the two (external) DNS serve	ame and DHCP ers to resolve names			
IP Data	Hostname	lt-4200s				
Contacts	Domain	thrane.io				
Tracking	DNS Server 1	8.8.8.8				
External I/O	DNS Server 2	8.8.4.4				
Reset	Apply					
Maintenance v						
Legal notice						
Log out						
Disable login timeout						

Figure 322: Web server – Network (DNS)

DHCP

The DHCP tab shows the active DHCP leases. This includes LAN clients if ethernet is configured for DHCP server mode.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:24:49 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.289E
Dashboard	
Messages	Configuration - Network
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS DHCP Outgoing Firewall Port Forwarding Static Route PPPoE SDF
Authentication LRIT SSAS Network IP Data Telephony Contacts Tracking External I/O GNSS, BAM and MSI Reset	Host Name MAC Address Assigned IP Lease Time Interface No clients
Log out	
Disable login timeout	

Figure 323: Web server – Network (DHCP)

Outgoing Firewall

Configuring the outgoing firewall allows the LT-4200S GMDSS system operator to block all outgoing user network traffic apart from specified exceptions.

When adding rules to the outgoing firewall the user must for each rule provide a name for the rule and a destination domain name for which network traffic shall be allowed. e.g. predictwind.com, see Figure 324 below.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:26:2 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.2	24 90E				
Dashboard Messages ~	Configuration	n - Network				
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS	DHCP Outgoing Firewall	Port Forwarding	Static Route	PPPoE	SDF
Authentication LRIT	The firewall service makes	it possible to filter network data fr	rom the LAN and PPP	DE interfaces to th	e satellite net	work.
SSAS Network	Enable					
IP Data Telephony	Advanced options					
Contacts Tracking	Block all user network traffi	ic apart from the following excepti	ons			
External I/O	Name	Destination domain				
GNSS, BAM and MSI Reset	CNN	lite.cnn.com				
Maintenance	PW	predictwind.com		â		
Legal notice	PW2	predictwind.net				
Low out	Thrane	www.thrane.eu		â		
Log out	Name	E.g example.com		+		
Disable login timeout						
	Apply					
	Note that when domain nar	mes are used as destination in fire	ewall rules:			
	Adding e.g. example	.com will allow any IP protocol/po	ort to that domain as w	ell as any sub don	nains	
	such as www.examp	le.com, ftp.example.com etc.	ado I AN cliente mus	havo		
	their DNS server add	dress manually configured to the I	LAN IP address of the	LT-4200S		

Figure 324: Web server – Network (Outgoing firewall)

NOTE: If the LT-4200S GMDSS system is not setup in DHCP sever mode, LAN clients should have their DNS server address manually configured to the LAN IP address of the LT-4200.

If the user wants more configurability, then the Advanced options ticker can be clicked, allowing the user to configure, a name, a Destination domain or IP address, a chosen protocol, and which port to use. Protocol and Port selection can either be input or set to 'any'. See Figure 325 below for details.

LT-4200S System UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:27:05 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.290E								
Dashboard Messages ~	Configuration -	·Network						
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS DH	ICP Outgoing Firewall Port Forwarding Static Rou	ite PPPoE SDF					
Authentication LRIT	The firewall service makes it po	ssible to filter network data from the LAN and PPPoE interfaces	to the satellite network.					
SSAS Network	Enable							
IP Data Telephony	Advanced options							
Contacts E	Block all user network traffic ap	art from the following exceptions						
External I/O	Name	Destination domain or IP	Protocol Port					
GNSS, BAM and MSI Reset	Thrane	192.168.1.1	TCP 80					
Maintenance v	PW	155.88.126.10	UDP 60 🛅					
Legal notice	Name	Any	Any					
Log out	Apply							
Disable login timeout	Note that when domain names	are used as destination in firewall rules:						
	 Adding e.g. example.con such as www.example.co If the LT-4200S system is their DNS server address 	n will allow any IP protocol/port to that domain as well as any sub om, ftp.example.com etc. s not setup in DHCP server mode, LAN clients must have s manually configured to the LAN IP address of the LT-4200S) domains					

Figure 325: Web server – Network (Outgoing firewall, advanced options)

Port forwarding

Port forwarding allows access from the internet through the LT-4200S to equipment connected to the LT-4210S or LT-3140S LAN port.

When setting up port forwarding for the LT-4200S GMDSS system the user needs to establish port forwarding rules. These user needs to configure the external port, the local IP address, the port, and the chosen protocol.

To ensure smooth operation after setting up a port forwarding rule, the IP address(es) of the user equipment that shall be reachable remotely should be statically assigned. If the LT-4200S GMDSS System is configured as DHCP server make sure to assign IP addresses outside the DHCP server range.

An example of a configured port forwarding rule can be seen on Figure 326. There a PC running a web service on tcp port 8080 is connected to the LT-4200S LAN port. The PC is statically assigned the IP address 192.168.1.202. Adding this port forwarding rule allows access to the Web service.

To verify whether the rule was set up correctly and the web service is accessible remotely visit the URL <u>https://<public-IP-of-terminal>:8080</u>

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:27 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.	:46 290E				
Dashboard Messages ~	Configuratio	on - Netv	work			
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS	DHCP O	utgoing Firewall	Port Forwarding	Static Route PPPoE	SDF
Authentication LRIT	Use masquerading					
SSAS Network	Map the following externa	I ports to local IF	^o and port			
IP Data Telephony	Name	Ext. Port	Local IP Addres	ss Port	Protocol	
Contacts Tracking	Custom web service	8080	192.168.1.202	80	ТСР	
External I/O GNSS, BAM and MSI	Name				TCP V	
Reset Maintenance ~	Apply					
Legal notice						
Log out						
Disable login timeout						

Figure 326: Web server – Network (Port forwarding)

IMPORTANT: TCP port 443 is reserved by the LT-4200S terminal and may not be used as external port in port forwarding rules.

Masquerading

It is possible to mask the IP address of any incoming IP connection using the masquerade option. By ticking on the *'Use masquerading'* box the LT-4200S will replace the source IP address of the incoming IP connection with the IP address of the LT-4200S terminal LAN port before it is forwarded to the configured destination. This is shown on Figure 327.

Masquerading may be used if the PC/user equipment being the target of port forwarding rules has another preferred route to the internet e.g. via a VSAT solution etc. In that case the PC will – if masquerading is not enabled – chose to send its replies via that route instead of via the LT-4200. By using masquerading the host is forced to send its replies via the LT-4200S as the LT-4200S IP address is the only visible IP address to the target/host.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:28:05 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.291E						
Dashboard	Configuration -	Notv	work				
Messages v	Configuration -	INCLV	VUIN				
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS DH	CP O	utgoing Firewall	Port Forwarding	Static Route	PPPoE	SDF
Authentication LRIT	Use masquerading	<					
SSAS Network	Map the following external ports	s to local IP	and port				
IP Data Telephony	Name	Ext. Port	Local IP Addres	s Port	Protocol		
Contacts	Custom web service	8080	192 168 1 202	80	TCP	1	
Fracking							
GNSS, BAM and MSI	Name				TCP 🗸 🕇		
Reset							
Maintenance ~	Apply						
Legal notice							
Log out							
Disable login timeout							

Figure 327: Web server – Network (Port forwarding (Masquerading))

Static Route

It is possible to route IP data to other network segments on the LAN by using the Static Route feature of the LT-4200S system. This allows the user to configure rules containing the destination IP address and the used gateway.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:29 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29	290E				
Dashboard		NI 6 1				
Messages v	Configuratio	on - Network				
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS	DHCP Outgoing Firewa	all Port Forwarding	Static Route	PPPoE	SDF
Authentication LRIT	Allow LT-4200S to route I	P data to other network segme	nts on the LAN.			
SSAS	Name	Destination	Gateway	Delete		
Network				<u>~</u>		
IP Data	VPN1	172.16.0.0/16	10.1.10.6			
Telephony						
Contacts	+ Add Route					
Tracking						
External I/O	Apply Cancel					
GNSS, BAM and MSI						
Reset						
Maintenance v						
Legal notice						
Log out						
Disable login timeout						

Figure 328: Web server – Network (Static Route)

PPPoE

It is possible to setup the PPPoE service for the LT-4200S system, which makes it possible for a connected network device to create a point-to-point connection to the internet. As described *in PPPoE* on page 152, the rules regarding outgoing firewall can be enabled for the PPPoE connection.

The PPPoE connection must be configured by setting up the Service name, Access Concentrator (AC) name, User name and Password. See Figure 329 for configuration.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:30:46 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E			
Dashboard	Configuration	n Notwork		
Messages v	Conliguration	1 - INELWORK		
Configuration ^	Interfaces DNS	DHCP Outgoing Firewall Port Forwarding Static Route PPPoE SDF		
Authentication LRIT SSAS Network	The PPPoE service makes in point connection to the Inter Note: the satellite link is alw service is not affected by the	it possible for a network device to make a point to rnet. ways available to the PPPoE service. The PPPoE re IP data service's manual start/stop.		
IP Data Telephony	Enable			
Contacts Tracking	Service name	Iridium Internet LT-4200S		
External I/O	AC name	LT-4200S-01080116		
GNSS, BAM and MSI Reset	Use firewall and DNS			
Maintenance v	User name Password	01080116		
Legal notice	Apply			
Log out				
Disable login timeout				

Figure 329: Web server – Network (PPPoE)

<u>SDF</u>

If Secondary Data Flows have been provisioned by the service provider they will be shown under *Available flows* provided the LT-4200S has a SIM inserted and is connected to the Iridium network.

It is recommended to use the default gateway address shown for each SDF but these may be changed to match any existing network configuration of the installation where the LT-4200S is used. See Figure 330 on page 216.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:31:16 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.289E				
Dashboard	`onfiguu	ration Notwo	rla		
Messages ~	Johngui	alion - Nelwo	IK		
Configuration ^	Interfaces	DNS DHCP Outgo	ing Firewall Port Forwarding	Static Route PPPoE	SDF
Authentication Ea LRIT To SSAS Network	access the sub eccess the sub Be setup w Forward sub	Data Flow provides a separat onet LAN clients must: /ith a VLAN using the indicate ibnet traffic to the configured	e on-air connection to the indicated d VLAN id gateway address	subnet.	
IP Data As Telephony ne Contacts	signed gatewa twork ranges 1	y addresses must be unique 0.0.0.0/8 or 192.168.0.0/16.	between flows and within subnets o	f the private	
Tracking Av	ailable flows				
External I/O GNSS_BAM and MSI	DF	Subnet			
Reset	o available flo	WS			
Maintenance ~	onfiguration				
Legal notice S	DF VLAN	Gateway	Enable		
Log out 1	5	192.168.11.1/24			
Disable login timeout 2	6	192.168.12.1/24			
3	7	192.168.13.1/24			
4	8	192.168.14.1/24			
	Apply Cano	cel			
No	 the changing a Enabled flot 	a gateway address will tempo wws are "always-on" and firew	rarily interrupt voice and data servic all rules does not apply.	es	

Figure 330: Web server – Network (SDF)

IP Data

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is supporting Modem Data (Direct Internet and RUDICS) services via Serial over Ethernet on the Ethernet (RJ45) interface, which is described in *Ethernet RJ45 (LAN)* on page 33. The IP Data services are described in *Data* from page 147.



Figure 331: Web server (IP Data)

Telephony

The LT-4200S System has a built-in PBX trunk (SIP), which supports internal and external satellite calling. The LT-4200S system only supports 3 x Iridium satellite voice channel. The PBX trunk (SIP) can be accessed via Ethernet, RJ45. Up to 8 external SIP devices can be registered in the PBX trunk. The web server, Configuration - SIP is illustrated in Figure 332.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 10 POSN: 55) Sep 2 5°49.15	024 07:20:20 4N 12°29.290)E			
Dashboard Messages ~	Cor	nfigu	iration	- Telephony			
Configuration ^ Authentication LRIT SSAS Network	Availabl Line 1 1 S 2 F 3 F Phones	e outgoi Ype Safety V Postpaid Postpaid	ing lines Numbe oice 881672 881677 881677	r 700041 135670 135647			
IP Data Telephony	Enable	Туре	Username/ Number	Password	Caller ID	Lines	Registered
Contacts Tracking		CU	1000		Handset		~
External I/O GNSS and BAM		SIP	1100	1234	Phone 1		
Reset		SIP	1101	1234	Phone 2		✓
Maintenance v		SIP	1102	1234	Phone 3		-
Legal notice		SIP	1103	1234	Phone 4		-
Log out		SIP	1104	1234	Phone 5		-
Disable login timeout		SIP	1105	1234	Phone 6		-
		SIP	1106	1234	Phone 7		-
		SIP	1107	1234	Phone 8]	-
	Apply	Ca	ncel				

Figure 332: Web server (Telephony)

In the LT-4210S Control Unit display (MENU -> System -> Telephony) it is possible to get an actual status of the number of SIP devices and their registration status. This is further illustrated and described in *System* on page 164.

The following external applications requires a SIP configuration:

- Connection of ships PBX
- External SIP Phones
- External Analogue Phone Adapter
- SIP Softphones via external Wi-Fi Access Point (WAP)

NOTE: External SIP phones and registered SIP devices can only initiate and receive voice calls (priority = routine). If an external SIP phone is in an active voice call, then a dedicated

symbol will be shown in the status bar. A Safety Call will always preempt the voice call (priority = routine).

An incoming voice call (priority = routine) to the LT-4200S GMDSS system, will be signaled to all external SIP devices. The first SIP devices or LT-3120 Handset answering the incoming voice call will be connected. The LT-4200S GMDSS system is currently not supporting call forwarding.

Contacts

The user of the LT-4200S GMDSS system can configure Contacts directly from the web server or from the LT-4210S Control Unit as described in *Phone* on page 154.It is possible to both edit and create new contacts. The web server contact list is identical to the one seen on the LT-4210S Control Unit.

To add a new contact, press the "+" sign, then input: Name, Phone Number and/or Email. When finished inputting information press the Apply button.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov POSN: 55°49.1	2024 14:34:49 153N 12°29.290	E	
Dashboard	Config		Carata ata	
Messages	Config	uration	- Contacts	
Configuration	Contacts	Import/expor	t	
Authentication	No contacts d	lefined		
LRIT	Name		Phone number	Delete
SSAS Network	Lars Thrane	Test	004529401008	â
IP Data	Full Name		Phone number	â
Telephony				_
Contacts Tracking	+ Add Con	ntact		
External I/O	Apply C	Cancel		
GNSS, BAM and MSI				
Reset				
Maintenance	~			
Legal notice				
Log out				
Disable login timeout				

Figure 333: Web server – (Contacts)

NOTE: It is possible to edit contacts on the Web Server. To do so, edit Name, Phone number or Email address, and then press the Apply button.

Import / Export of contacts

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is supports Import and Export of contact information via the web server. The system utilizes the Vcard format for both Import and Export of contacts. The system can Import and Export up to 100 contacts. See Figure 334 for details.

LT-4200S System	JTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:35:12 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.290E
Dashboard	Configuration Contrato
Messages v	Configuration - Contacts
Configuration ^	Contacts Import/export
Authentication LRIT	Import/Export of contacts
SSAS Network	Multiple contacts can be specified by uploading a file to the LT-4200S. The file must contain contacts in the Vcard format and it must contain a maximum of 100 contacts.
IP Data Telephony	Select a file to be uploaded: Choose File No file chosen
Contacts Tracking External I/O	Import Contacts
GNSS, BAM and MSI Reset	The contacts stored in the LT-4200S can be downloaded (exported) and saved in an external storage (e.g. for backup). The file contains contacts in the Vcard format.
Maintenance v	Export Contacts
Legal notice	
Log out	
Disable login timeout	

Figure 334: Web server (Contacts)

Commercial Tracking

.

The LT-4200S GMDSS System offers Commercial Tracking. This is enabled through the service provider. Up to 4 Service Providers can be configured for Commercial Tracking. See Figure 335 below.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:35:32 POSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.290E
Dashboard	
Messages	Contiguration - Commercial Tracking The Commercial Tracking function is not activated.
Configuration	To activate Tracking, please contact a certified Service Provider
Authentication	
LRIT	
SSAS	
Network	
IP Data	
Telephony	
Contacts	
Tracking	
External I/O	
GNSS, BAM and MSI	
Reset	
Maintenance	×
Legal notice	
Log out	
Disable login timeout	

Figure 335: Web server (Tracking)

External I/O

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports configuration of External I/O. The LT-4200S GMDSS system has one input and one output supported in the AUX connector. The AUX connector is described in *Auxiliary (AUX)* on page 34. Figure 336 is illustrating the configuration of the External I/O.

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:35:55 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E		
Dashboard	Orafianation		
Messages ~	Configuration -	External I/O	
Configuration ^	Outputs	[Techangel size and a	
Authentication		External higer V	Puise @ 1 HZ V
IRIT	Inputs		
SSAS	Input #1	Not assigned	
Network	Apply		
IP Data			
Telephony			
Contacts			
Tracking			
External I/O			
GNSS, BAM and MSI			
Reset			
Maintenance ~			
Legal notice			
Log out			
Disable login timeout			

Figure 336: Web server (External I/O)

<u>Output</u>

The External I/O output configuration options are listed in Table 54.

External I/O - Output Configuration		
Not assigned default		
External ringer	Level	
	Pulse @ 0.5 Hz	
	Pulse @ 1 Hz	
	Pulse @ 2 Hz	

Table 54: External I/O (Output)

<u>Input</u>

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is currently not supporting any functionality for the External input.

GNSS, BAM and MSI

The LT-4200S GMDSS system has a built-in GNSS receiver located in the LT-4230 Antenna Unit. The GNSS receiver is used for time, date, and position of the LT-4200S GMDSS system, for example used for position reporting in connection with sending a Distress Alert message or used by the tracking application. The GNSS receiver can be configured to operate on different satellite systems (e.g., GPS only) - this can be managed under the GNSS module, as illustrated in Figure 337.

It is possible to configure the following functionality: GNSS, BAM and MSI on the LT-4210S Control Unit (CU - AUX) and LT-3140S Interface Unit (IU - Port 1 and IU - Port 2) interfaces, respectively.

This section describes the following configuration options:

- GNSS module
- GNSS (output of NMEA 0183 sentences)
- Bridge Alert Management (BAM)
- Maritime Safety Information (MSI)

LT-4200S System	UTC: 26 Nov 2024 14:36:15 POSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E
Dashboard	Configuration CNCC module
Messages	Conliguration - GNSS module
	Module configuration
Configuration	Satellite system(s) GPS, SBAS, GLONASS V
Authentication	Apply
LRIT	Арріу
SSAS	
Network	Configuration Ports
IP Data	Conliguration - Ports
Telephony	RS-422 serial port configuration
Contacts	Port CU - AUX IU - Port 1 IU - Port 2
Tracking	Baud 4800 V 4800 V 4800 V
External I/O	GNSS C C
GNSS, BAM and MSI	BAM 🗌 🗌
Reset	MSI 🗆 🗆
Maintenance	Network port configuration
Legal notice	Port CU - LAN
	UDP Port 10110
Log out	GNSS 🗌
Disable login timeout	Apply

Figure 337: Web server (GNSS, BAM and MSI)

NOTE: The Port configuration illustrated above in Figure 337 for GNSS, BAM and MSI supports the following baud rates: 4.800, 9.600, and 38.400. The baud rate can be configured individually per port. The ports are all bi-directional RS-422. Only BAM can receive data.

GNSS module

The GNSS receiver used in the LT-4230 Antenna Unit is a 72 ch. receiver with SBAS reception. The GNSS receiver performance is listed in Table 55.

	GNSS receiver performance				
Data	Accuracy	Resolution	Comments		
Position	GNSS: < 2.5 m SBAS: < 2 m	0.1 m	CEP, 50%, 24 hours static, -130 dBm, > 6 SVs By default, the GNSS receiver is configured for GPS, SBAS, GLONASS reception Time-To-First-Fix (cold acquisition): 26 s.		
SOG	0.1 knot	0.1 knot	0 to 195 knots		

Table 55: GNSS receiver performance

The GNSS receiver can be configured to the options listed in Table 56. The GPS, SBAS, GLONASS configuration is the recommended configuration.

GNSS Receiver configuration		
GNSS Receiver	Talker ID	
GPS, SBAS, GLONASS	GN	
GPS, SBAS, BeiDou	GN	
GPS, SBAS	GP	
GPS	GP	
GLONASS	GL	
BeiDou	GB	

Table 56: GNSS receiver configuration

The horizontal position accuracy (static) has been measured for different configurations of the GNSS receiver, see Figure 338.



Figure 338: GNSS receiver horizontal position error

IMPORTANT: The installation of the LT-4230 Antenna Unit will affect the performance of the GNSS receiver. If line-of-sight to the GNSS satellites are disturbing the quality of the signal received by the GNSS receiver, then degraded performance must be accepted.

<u>GNSS</u>

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports outputting of GNSS NMEA 0183 sentences via the LT-4210S Control Unit AUX (RS-422) or via the LT-3140S Interface Unit RS-422 (Port 1 or Port 2) interface. The AUX connector is described in detail in *Auxiliary (AUX)* on page 34. The GNSS output must be enabled via the web server, under Configuration - GNSS, BAM and MSI. The baud rate can be configured to 4.800, 9.600, or 38.400 baud. The output rate of the NMEA 0183 sentences is 1 Hz. It is possible to broadcast the GNSS NMEA 0183 sentences over UDP using the LAN interface. Figure 339 below shows the NMEA 0183 sentences supported by the LT-4200S GMDSS system.

LT-4200S System	TC: 26 Nov 2024 14:36:38 OSN: 55°49.154N 12°29.289E
Dashboard	Configuration CNSS module
Messages v	
Configuration ^	Satellite system(s) GPS, SBAS, GLONASS V
Authentication LRIT SSAS	Apply
Network IP Data	Configuration - Ports
Telephony	RS-422 serial port configuration
Contacts	Port CU - AUX IU - Port 1 IU - Port 2
External I/O	Baud 4800 ♥ 4800 ♥ 4800 ♥
GNSS, BAM and MSI	
Reset	MSI D D
Maintenance ~	Network port configuration
Legal notice	Port CU - LAN
Log out	UDP Port 10110 GNSS
Disable login timeout	GNSS NMEA Sentences
	DTM 🗹
	GBS
	GGA 🗹
	GLL 🗹
	GNS
	GRS CSA
	GST GST
	GSV
	RMC 🗹
	VTG 🗹
	ZDA 🗹
	Apply

Figure 339: Web server (GNSS - NMEA 0183 sentences)

The GBS, GNS, GRS, GST and GSV sentences are not supported for the 4.800 and 9.600 baud configuration.

NOTE:Changing the GNSS receiver configuration (default: GPS, SBAS, GLONASS) might affect the
NMEA 0183 Talker ID. The Talker ID for the different configurations of the GNSS receiver is
listed in Table 56 on page 224.

BAM and MSI

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports BAM and MSI via the LT-4210S Control Unit AUX (RS-422) or via the LT-3140S Interface Unit RS-422 (Port 1 or Port 2) interface. The AUX connector is described in detail in *Auxiliary (AUX)* on page 34. BAM and MSI must be enabled via the web server, under Configuration - GNSS, BAM and MSI. The baud rate can be configured to 4.800, 9.600, or 38.400 baud. The BAM and MSI functions must be enabled individually on separate interfaces, see Figure 340 below.



Figure 340: Web server (BAM and MSI)

NOTE: The LT-4210S Control Unit AUX connector is providing one bi-directional RS-422 interface. The LT-3140S Interface Unit RS-422 (Port 1 and 2) is providing two bi-directional RS-422 interfaces.

The Supported BAM sentences are described in *BAM sentences* on page 178. The Supported MSI sentences are described in *MSI sentences* on page 179.

Reset

The LT-4200S GMDSS system supports reset to factory default. This reset functionality is only available via the web server, see Figure 341. By pressing 'Reset to factory default' and acknowledging this reset, the LT-4200S GMDSS system will configure all settings to default and remove all user data (e.g., Contact List, Call History, Safety Messages, Safety Calls, MSI, etc.). The LT-4200S GMDSS system will reboot once the factory reset has been affected and start up again showing the Installation Wizard in the display.



Figure 341: Web server (Reset)

NOTE: By 'Reset to factory default' the LT-4200S GMDSS system will lose all settings configured and user data will be lost. The system will be operational again once the Installation Wizard has been completed.

The default values for display and audio settings are displayed in Table 57 below.

Default Dis	Default Display and Audio settings				
Display, Mode	Day time				
Display, Brightness	70%				
Speaker volume	80%				
Handset volume	60%				
Ringer volume	80%				
Key Beep volume	40%				

Table 57: Default display and audio settings

The Reset network configuration works as described on the web server. Pressing the button will reset all network configuration settings, including IP address/mask, DNS, Routing, Firewall settings, Port Forwarding, SDF and so forth. A pop-up will ask for confirmation before resetting the values to Factory default.

Maintenance

Diagnostic

A diagnostic report can be downloaded from the webpage 'Diagnostics'. Navigate to the webpage and press the 'Download diagnostics report' button. A file with the following filename (example): LT-4200S_0000061_191115-152149.tar.gz will be downloaded to a location selected by the user. The Diagnostics Report can be sent back to Lars Thrane A/S in case of required support and assistance. The Diagnostics Report contains data describing the current state of the system and historical events. The data can be used by support to identify issues and determine their cause.

To help identifying a potential problem with the LT-4200S GMDSS system it is very important that the Diagnostic Report is sent back to Lars Thrane A/S.

LT-4200S System	JTC: 10 Sep 2024 07:23:21 /OSN: 55°49.153N 12°29.290E
Dashboard	
Messages ~	Diagnostics
Configuration ~	The Diagnostics Report contains data describing the current state of the system and historical events. The data can be used by support to identify issues and determine their cause.
Maintenance ^	Notice!
Diagnostics	The Diagnostics Report may contain sensitive data, including:
Software update	Contacts
System reboot	Call history (both voice and data) Massage (a.g. SMS, Empil, Safety Massage)
Legal notice	Messages (e.g. SMS, Email, Safety Message) Current and historical GNSS positions
	Vessel identification
Log out	The Diagnostics report is encrypted and can only be read by Lars Thrane A/S. Lars Thrane A/S does not share the data in the diagnostics
Disable login timeout	report with any third party.
Blouble login amedat	By downloading the Diagnostics Report you attest to having read, understood, and agreed to the conditions stated above.
	Download diagnostics report

Figure 342: Web server (download diagnostics report)

NOTE: The diagnostic report is encrypted and can only be read by Lars Thrane A/S. Lars Thrane A/S does not share the data in the diagnostics report with any third party. By downloading and sending the diagnostic report to Lars Thrane A/S you attest to having read, understood, and agreed to the conditions stated under the Notice! (highlighted in Figure 342 above).

Software update

Carefully read the software release note, provided by Lars Thrane A/S, before software updating the LT-4200S GMDSS system.

Access the web server of the LT-4200S GMDSS system, by follow the instructions in *Accessing the built-in web server* on page 191. Select the 'Software update' web page and click the 'Choose File' button to select the LT-4200S GMDSS system file, which must be uploaded to the system. The software image has the following filename (example): LT-4200S-v1.0XR-00XX.lti - the software image and release documentation will be available on the official company website: https://www.thrane.eu, under the specific product or in the Partner Area. Click the 'Upload' button to start the upload of the new software image. The upload and installation of the software image will take a few minutes. Progress indication bars can be monitored on the Software update webpage, while the software update is on-going. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will reboot once the software image is installed safely in all units. The LT-4200S GMDSS system will start up showing the Service Wizard, when the system has been software updated, see *Service Wizard* on page 78.



Figure 343: Web server (Software update)

- **NOTE:** The LT-4210S Control Unit, LT-4230 Antenna Unit, and LT-3140S Interface Unit must be operated with the same software version. The software update will happen automatically, if the control unit identifies that the software version in the other units is different. Check or verify the web server Dashboard for software versions in each of the LT-4200S GMDSS system units, see *Dashboard* on page 192.
- **IMPORTANT**: Do not remove power from the control unit or interface unit while the software update is on-going. Also, do not disconnect the antenna cable between the control unit and the antenna unit, while the software update is on-going.
- **IMPORTANT:** The Advanced Settings shall not be used under normal circumstances. Do not use this function unless specifically instructed by Lars Thrane A/S or by GMDSS certified partner.

System reboot

It is possible to reboot the LT-4200S GMDSS system directly from the web server using the System reboot tab. The entire LT-4200S GMDSS system will be rebooted, including all connected peripheral units.



Figure 344: Web server (Software update)

Legal notice

The LT-4200S GMDSS system contains Open Source software components. The Open Source software components used and related license information can be viewed by pressing the link 'here' under the Legal notice webpage, see Figure 345.



Figure 345: Web server (legal notice)

Log out

By pressing the 'Log out' webpage the web server will redirect you to the Authentication login, where it is required to use the Username and Password to re-enter the web server again. The Authentication is described in *Authentication* on page 196.

Disable login timeout

The web server will automatically logout after 5 minutes without activity. The user can disable this automatic logout by pressing the 'Disable login timeout' webpage, which then will change to a red color and text: 'Enable login timeout'. The user must manually remove this configuration by pressing the webpage to go back to default settings and automatically logout.



Figure 346: Web server (disable login timeout)

Service & Repair

This section describes what the end-user must do in case of required service or repair.

NOTE: The LT-4200S GMDSS system does not require any scheduled maintenance or service. Make sure that the product is installed, as described in this manual, before making contact to the distributor or dealer for further assistance.

If the LT-4200S GMDSS system for some reason does not work as described in this manual, contact the distributor or dealer, from where the product was originally bought. The distributor or dealer will have experience and know-how to assist with further technical support and troubleshooting.

Contact your GMDSS Partner:

- Make sure to have the product name, unit part numbers, and unit serial numbers identified. The unit part numbers, and the unit serial numbers are identified on the unit label, which is found on the backside, or at the bottom side of the units. Alternatively, use the built-in web server to readout the unit part numbers, and the unit serial numbers
- 2) Write a technical report about the observation or error. If possible, attach a picture of the installed product and include a wiring diagram. If possible, download a diagnostic report as described in *Diagnostic* on page 228
- 3) Send all information to the official LT GMDSS Partner
- **IMPORTANT**: Unless otherwise agreed, the end-user shall always coordinate service and repair issues directly with the LT GMDSS Partner. This practice also applies for returning of products for service and repair.

All information that will get back to Lars Thrane A/S, either directly or indirectly, will be handled with confidentiality. End-user sensitive data will not be shared with any third party without prior written acceptance from the involved parties.

Appendixes

App. A - Applicable Standards

- [1] IEC 61097-16, Edition 1.0, 2019-07
 Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS)
 Part 16: Ship earth stations operating in mobile-satellite systems recognized for use in the GMDSS
 Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results
- [2] IEC 61162-1, 2024-04, Edition 6.0
 Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems Digital interfaces
 Part 1: Single talker and multiple listeners
- [3] IEC 61162-2, 2024-04, Edition 2.0
 Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems Digital interfaces
 Part 2: Single talker and multiple listeners, high-speed transmission
- [4] IEC 61162-450, 2024-04, Edition 3.0
 Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems Digital interfaces Part 450: Multiple talkers and multiple listeners – Ethernet interconnection
- [5] IEC 62923-1, Edition 1.0, 2018-08
 Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems Bridge alert management
 Part 1: Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results
- [6] IEC 62923-2, Edition 1.0, 2018-08
 Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems Bridge alert management Part 2: Alert and cluster identifiers and other additional features

App. B - Bridge Alert Management (BAM)

Alert generating functions

The LT-4200S GMDSS system contains the following functions capable of raising alerts.

Name	Can be deactivated	Description	
GMDSS	No	Responsible for all GMDSS services (Distress Alert & Distress Call, Distress Alert Relay, MSI, Safety Voice, Safety Messaging). It is not possible to deactivate this function.	
GNSS Position	Yes	The system can be configured to use either GNSS position (automation or manual position. Alerts of the disabled mode will be cleared.	
Manual Position	Yes		
SIM	No	Responsible for managing the Subscriber Identity Module (SIM) card. It is not possible to deactivate this function.	

Table 58: Alert generating functions

Alert categories

The BAM concept groups alerts into categories as a mean to indicate where an alert may be acknowledged (and thus also whether it can have its responsibility transferred):

Category	Description
A	Alert for which additional information at the alert source is necessary, as decision support for the evaluation of the alert related condition.
	Alert can only be acknowledged at the alert source.
В	Alert where no additional information for decision support is necessary besides the information which can be presented at the CAM UI.
	Alert may be acknowledged at the alert source and/or the CAM system.
С	Alert that cannot be acknowledged on the bridge but for which information is required about the status and treatment of the alert.

Table 59: BAM alert categories

List of alerts

ID:	3013	Priority:	Caution	Category: B			
Title:	Doubtful p	Doubtful pos					
Description:	GMDSS up	GMDSS update manual position					
What to do:	Update the manual position as described in <i>Position Settings</i> on page 119.						
Conditions:	Raised in r Rectified u Cleared to	Raised in manual position mode if manually set position is older than 4 hours. Rectified upon update of manual position. Cleared to normal if position mode is set to automatic.					

ID:	3016	Priority:	Caution	Category: B				
Title:	Lost positi	Lost position						
Description:	Check GM	Check GMDSS terminal for lost position						
What to do:	Change to	Change to manual position mode as described in <i>Position Settings</i> on page 119.						
Conditions:	Raised in a minimum Rectified i Cleared to	Raised in automatic (GNSS) position mode if position is lost and stay lost for a minimum of 10 minutes. Rectified if GNSS receiver obtains a valid position. Cleared to normal if position mode is set to manual.						

ID:	3023	Priority:	Caution	Category: B			
Title:	Power fail	Power fail					
Description:	High syste	High system input voltage. Check power supply					
What to do:	Verify the	Verify the power supply operates according to its specifications.					
Conditions:	Raised wh system sp Rectified i	Raised when system input voltage is measured and determined to be outside system specifications. Rectified if system input power returns to a valid voltage.					

ID:	3023	Priority:	Caution	Category: B			
Title:	Power fail						
Description:	Low syster	m input vol	tage. Check p	power supply			
What to do:	If connected to a battery, verify the battery charge level and battery charger. Verify power cables are intact, properly connected, and of proper dimensions.						
Conditions:	Raised wh system spo Rectified i	Raised when system input voltage is measured and determined to be outside system specifications. Rectified if system input power returns to a valid voltage.					

ID:	3023	Priority:	Caution	Category: B				
Title:	Power fail	Power fail						
Description:	Low anter	na input vo	oltage. Check	power supply				
What to do:	The voltag specificati or the syst High cable connector	The voltage drop on the antenna cable results in antenna input voltage outside specifications. Either the cable loss must be lowered (e.g. by replacing the cable) or the system input voltage increased. High cable loss can also be caused by poor cable connections. Verify cable connectors.						
Conditions:	Raised when antenna input voltage is measured and determined to be outside system specifications. Rectified if antenna input power returns to a valid voltage.							

ID:	3023	Priority:	Caution	Category: B			
Title:	Power fail	Power fail					
Description:	High unit i	High unit input voltage. Check power supply					
What to do:	Verify the	Verify the power supply operates according to its specifications.					
Conditions:	Raised when interface unit input voltage is measured and determined to be outside system specifications. Rectified if interface unit input power returns to a valid voltage.						

ID:	3023	Priority:	Caution	Category: B			
Title:	Power fail						
Description:	Low unit i	nput voltag	ge. Check pov	ver supply			
What to do:	If connected to a battery, verify the battery charge level and battery charger. Verify power cables are intact, properly connected, and of proper dimensions.						
Conditions:	Raised wh outside sy Rectified i	Raised when interface unit input voltage is measured and determined to be outside system specifications. Rectified if interface unit input power returns to a valid voltage.					

ID:	3023	Priority:	Caution	Category: B			
Title:	Power fail						
Description:	Antenna ii	Antenna input voltage drop. See user manual					
What to do:	lf connect Verify pov	If connected to a battery, verify the battery charge level and battery charger. Verify power cables are intact, properly connected, and of proper dimensions.					
Conditions:	Raised wh to be outs Rectified i	Raised when antenna unit input voltage or current is measured and determined to be outside system specifications. Rectified if antenna unit input power returns to a valid voltage and current.					

ID:	3062	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer: Yes		
Title:	System fault			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory: No		
Description:	System se	System self-check error. Try power-cycle system						
What to do:	Power-cycle the system. If that does not help, contact the service provider.							
Conditions:	Raised when the system self-check detects an unspecified internal error.							
Escalation:	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.							

ID:	3062	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Printer fault			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No	
Description:	Check GMDSS printer							
What to do:	Check printer is online / selected. If offline / deselected, bring it back online / re- select it. If above does not resolve the issue, consult the manual of the printer.							
Conditions:	Raised when the system self-check detects an unspecified printer error or if the printer has been put offline / deselected for 60 seconds or more.							
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						

ID:	3062	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer: Yes	
Title:	Antenna fault			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory: No	
Description:	Self-check	Self-check error. Try power-cycle system					
What to do:	Power-cycle the system. If that does not help, contact the service provider.						
Conditions:	Raised when the antenna self-check detects an unspecified error.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.					

ID:	3079	Priority:	Caution	Category: B					
Title:	Paper low	Paper low							
Description:	Check GM	Check GMDSS printer paper							
What to do:	Replace /	Replace / refill printer paper.							
Conditions:	Raised when printer is out of paper. Rectified when printer has been filled with new paper. Cleared to normal if printing to printer is disabled as described in <i>GMDSS Printer</i> on page 181.								

ID:	3116	Priority:	Caution	Category: B				
Title:	Lost conne	Lost connection						
Description:	Check GM	heck GMDSS satellite terminal						
What to do:	Verify the blocking t	Verify the Antenna Unit has free line of sight to the sky. Remove any object blocking the line of sight if possible.						
Conditions:	Raised when the terminal has been unable to detect or otherwise contact the satellites of the Iridium [®] satellite system for a period of one minute or more. Rectified when the terminal detects the Iridium [®] satellite system.							

ID:	3116	Priority:	Caution	Category: B				
Title:	Impaired r	Impaired radio						
Description:	MSI / Safe	ASI / Safety Message reception delayed						
What to do:	Verify the blocking tl	Verify the Antenna Unit has free line of sight to the sky. Remove any object blocking the line of sight if possible.						
Conditions:	Raised when the terminal has been informed by the Iridium [®] network about new message(s) ready for download by the terminal but the terminal has failed to do so 3 times in a row. Rectified when the terminal has successfully downloaded the message(s).							

ID:	3116	Priority:	Caution	Category: B				
Title:	Impaired i	Impaired radio						
Description:	Reception	Reception of MSI delayed. MSI list is outdated						
What to do:	Verify the blocking t	Verify the Antenna Unit has free line of sight to the sky. Remove any object blocking the line of sight if possible.						
Conditions:	Raised when the terminal has been instructed by the Iridium [®] network to download MSI messages or Safety Messages pending for the terminal but have failed to do so 3 times in a row. Rectified when the terminal successfully downloads the messages.							

ID:	3116	Priority:	Caution	Category: B						
Title:	Lost conne	Lost connection								
Description:	Critical hig	Critical high antenna temperature								
What to do:	Wait for tl The syster	Wait for the antenna to cool down. The system goes into low power mode, so it does not help to turn it off.								
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when the antenna temperature reaches beyond the operational limits. Rectified when the antenna temperature returns within operational limits.								
ID:	3116	Priority:	Caution	Category: B						
--------------	---	--	-------------------------------	---	--	--	--	--	--	--
Title:	Impaired i	mpaired radio								
Description:	High antei	High antenna temperature. Degraded performance								
What to do:	Wait for tl In the mea performar	ne antenna antime, the nce.	to cool down system will o	n. continue to be functional, but with reduced						
Conditions:	Raised when the antenna temperature reaches beyond the operational limits. Rectified when the antenna temperature returns within operational limits.									

ID:	3116	Priority:	Caution	Category: B						
Title:	Lost conne	ost connection								
Description:	Critical lov	Critical low antenna temperature								
What to do:	Wait for tl	he antenna	to heat up.							
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	ien the ante when the ar	enna tempera ntenna temp	ature reaches beyond the operational limits. erature returns within operational limits.						

ID:	3122	Priority:	Warning	Category:	А	Resp. transfer:	Yes
Title:	Distress Rx			Can ACK:	No	Transitory:	No
Description:	Incoming	distress. Ch	eck GMDSS o	display			
What to do:	Read the r page 90).	Read the received Distress Alert Relay (see <i>Maritime Safety Information (MSI)</i> on page 90).					
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	en a Distre when all Dis	ss Alert Relay stress Alert R	y message is elay message	receive es have	ed. e been read.	
Escalation:	Repeated	as a warnir	ng after 90 s.				
Other:	In case of reception of multiple Distress Alert Relay messages, only one alert is raised.						e alert is

ID:	3122	Priority:	Warning	Category:	А	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Urgency Rx			Can ACK:	No	Transitory:	No	
Description:	Incoming	ncoming urgency warning. Check GMDSS display						
What to do:	Read the r <i>Maritime</i> . 100).	Read the received urgency MSI message or urgency priority message (see Maritime Safety Information (MSI) on page 90 and Safety Messaging on page 100).						
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v been read	Raised when an urgency MSI message or urgency priority message is received. Rectified when all MSI messages and priority message of severity urgency have been read.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						
Other:	In case of	reception of	of multiple u	gency messa	iges, o	nly one alert is rai	sed.	

ID:	3122	Priority:	Warning	Category:	А	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Distress missed			Can ACK:	No	Transitory:	No	
Description:	Missed dis	/issed distress call. Check GMDSS display						
What to do:	Open the	Open the Call History to see the details on the missed call.						
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when an incoming distress priority voice call was not answered. Rectified when the Call History is accessed.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						
Other:	In case of	multiple m	issed calls, or	nly one alert	is raise	ed.		

ID:	3122	Priority:	Warning	Category:	А	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Urgency missed			Can ACK:	No	Transitory:	No	
Description:	Missed ur	Aissed urgency call. Check GMDSS display						
What to do:	Open the	Open the Call History to see the details on the missed call.						
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when an incoming urgency priority voice call was not answered. Rectified when the Call History is accessed.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						
Other:	In case of	multiple m	issed calls, or	nly one alert	is raise	ed.		

ID:	3123	Priority:	Caution	Category: B							
Title:	MSI Rx	MSI Rx									
Description:	Check new	heck new received maritime safety information									
What to do:	Read the r 90).	Read the received MSI message (see <i>Maritime Safety Information (MSI)</i> on page 90).									
Conditions:	Raised when a safety MSI message is received. Rectified when all MSI messages of severity safety have been read.										
Other:	In case of	reception o	of multiple sa	fety messages, only one alert is raised.							

ID:	3123	Priority:	Caution	Category: B							
Title:	Safety Rx	afety Rx									
Description:	Check nev	heck new received safety message									
What to do:	Read the r	Read the received priority message (see Safety Messaging on page 100).									
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when a safety priority message is received. Rectified when all priority messages of severity safety have been read.									
Other:	In case of	reception of	of multiple sa	fety messages, only one alert is raised.							

ID:	3123	Priority:	Caution	Category: B						
Title:	Safety mis	afety missed								
Description:	Missed sat	/issed safety call. Check GMDSS display								
What to do:	Open the	Open the Call History to see the details on the missed call.								
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when an incoming safety priority voice call was not answered. Rectified when the Call History is accessed.								
Other:	In case of	multiple m	issed calls, or	nly one alert is raised.						

ID:	11402	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Invalid antenna			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No	
Description:	GMDSS ur	GMDSS unavailable. Incompatible antenna						
What to do:	Replace th	ne Antenna	Unit with a d	compatible o	ne.			
Conditions:	Raised wh hardware	Raised when the Control Unit detects an incompatible Antenna Unit model or hardware revision.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						

ID:	11412	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Lost handset			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No	
Description:	Voice calls	/oice calls unavailable. Check handset cable						
What to do:	Check the	Check the cable between the handset and the Control Unit.						
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when Control Unit loose connection with the Handset. Rectified when connection is reestablished with the Handset.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						

ID:	11412	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Lost antenna			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No	
Description:	GMDSS ur	GMDSS unavailable. Check antenna cable						
What to do:	Check the	Check the cable between the Control Unit and the Antenna Unit.						
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when Control Unit loose connection with the Antenna Unit. Rectified when connection is reestablished with the Antenna Unit.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						

ID:	11412	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes		
Title:	Lost unit			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No		
Description:	Interface (unit lost. Cl	neck cable						
What to do:	Check the Interface I The Interf	Check the cable between the Control Unit and the Interface Unit and that the Interface Unit has power. The Interface Unit may have a separate power supply from the Control Unit.							
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when Control Unit loose connection with the Interface Unit. Rectified when connection is reestablished with the Interface Unit.							
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.							

ID:	11412	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes		
Title:	Lost panel			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No		
Description:	Alarm pan	larm panel lost. Check alarm panel cable							
What to do:	Check the	heck the cable between the Interface Unit and the Alarm Panel(s).							
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	en Interfac when conne	e Unit loose ection is rees	connection v tablished wit	vith an :h the <i>i</i>	Alarm Panel. Alarm Panel.			
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.							
Other:	In case co	nnection is	lost to multi	ple Alarm Pa	nels, o	nly one alert is rai	sed.		

ID:	11412	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes		
Title:	Lost adapt	ter		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No		
Description:	Printer ad	apter lost.	Check adapte	iter cable					
What to do:	Check the	Check the cable between the Interface Unit and the Printer Adapter.							
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when Interface Unit loose connection with the Printer Adapter. Rectified when connection is reestablished with the Printer Adapter.							
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.							

ID:	11412	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes				
Title:	Lost printer			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No				
Description:	Check prir	Check printer and cable									
What to do:	Check the Check the	Check the Printer Adapter is connected to the Printer. Check the Printer is powered on.									
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when Printer Adapter loses connection with the Printer. Rectified when connection is reestablished with the Printer.									
Escalation:	Repeated	as a warniı	ng after 90 s.	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.							

ID:	11422	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes		
Title:	Software fault			Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No		
Description:	Software o	oftware does not support hardware							
What to do:	Update th	Update the software of the system.							
Conditions:	Raised wh hardware	Raised when a hardware unit is added to the system, and if the version of the hardware is newer than supported by the system software.							
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.							

ID:	11422	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes		
Title:	Software f	fault		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No		
Description:	Please rei	nstall softw	are						
What to do:	Update th	Update the software of the system.							
Conditions:	Raised wh recover w	Raised when a software updated fails and the system cannot automatically recover without user interaction.							
Escalation:	Repeated	as a warnir	ng after 90 s.						

ID:	15102	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Lost SIM c	ard		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No	
Description:	GMDSS ur	MDSS unavailable. Check SIM card						
What to do:	Verify the page 32).	Verify the SIM card is properly inserted (see <i>Certus GMDSS SIM card</i> (SIM) on page 32).						
Conditions:	Raised wh Rectified v	Raised when the SIM card is removed or cannot be detected. Rectified when the SIM card is detected.						
Escalation:	Repeated	as a warnir	ng after 90 s.					

ID:	15502	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Connectio	n fail		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No	
Description:	Rejected b	Rejected by Iridium. Notify service provider						
What to do:	Contact yo	Contact your service provider.						
Conditions:	Raised wh	Raised when the SIM card is rejected by the Iridium [®] network.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						

ID:	15512	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	Connectio	n fail		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No	
Description:	Bad subsc	ad subscription. Notify service provider						
What to do:	Contact yo	Contact your service provider.						
Conditions:	Raised wh	Raised when the terminal is not properly provisioned in the Iridium [®] network.						
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						

ID:	21102	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes	
Title:	GMDSS fa	ult		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No	
Description:	GMDSS te	GMDSS terminal rejected by Iridium network						
What to do:	Contact yo	Contact your service provider.						
Conditions:	Raised wh	Raised when the terminal is rejected by the Iridium [®] network.						
Escalation:	Repeated	as a warnir	ng after 90 s.					

ID:	21102	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes		
Title:	GMDSS fa	ult		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No		
Description:	GMDSS ar	ntenna reje	cted by Iridiu						
What to do:	Contact yo	Contact your service provider.							
Conditions:	Raised wh	Raised when the Antenna Unit is rejected by the Iridium [®] network.							
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.							

ID:	21102	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes		
Title:	GMDSS fa	ult		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	No		
Description:	GMDSS SI	GMDSS SIM card rejected by Iridium network							
What to do:	Contact yo	our service	provider.						
Conditions:	Raised wh	Raised when the SIM card is rejected by the Iridium [®] network.							
Escalation:	Repeated	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.							

ID:	21202	Priority:	Warning	Category:	В	Resp. transfer:	Yes
Title:	Safety Tx f	fail		Can ACK:	Yes	Transitory:	Yes
Description:	Failed to send safety message						
What to do:	Verify the Antenna Unit has free line of sight to the sky. Remove any object blocking the line of sight if possible. Then initiate resending of the message (see <i>Safety Messaging</i> on page 100).						
Conditions:	Raised when sending of a Safety Message permanently failed.						
Escalation:	Repeated as a warning after 90 s.						
Other:	In case transmission of multiple safety messages fails, only one alert is raised.						

App. C - Multiple talkers and multiple listeners

IEC 61162 *Multiple talkers and multiple listeners* is a series of protocol definitions supporting both RS-422 and Ethernet for transporting its messages.

LT-4200S GMDSS system currently supports IEC 61162 over RS-422 only but is prepared for future support of IEC 61162 over Ethernet. The system meets the requirements to ONF in IEC 61162-450 and IEC 61162-460 and thus the LT-4200S GMDSS system is permitted to be connected to an IEC 61162 Ethernet network, though none of their functions are supported.

ONF network node

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is classified as an ONF network node by IEC 61162 using the following protocols: DHCP, IPv4, IPv4LL, UDP, TCP, SIP, RTP, HTTP, HTTPS, PPPoE, VLAN.

App. D - GNSS sentences

This appendix provides detailed information about the GNSS sentences supported by the LT-4200S GMDSS system. For further details see *GNSS sentences* on page 177 and web server configuration *GNSS, BAM and MSI* on page 223.

GNSS Talker identification mnemonics

The LT-4200S GMDSS system may use the following talker identifiers:

GNSS Talker Identification Mnemonics						
Talker Device Identifier Function						
Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS)	GN	GNSS				
Global Positioning System (GPS)	GP	GNSS				
GLONASS positioning system	GL	GNSS				
BeiDou positioning system	GB	GNSS				

Table 60: GNSS Talker identification mnemonics

GNSS Talker Sentence Overview

The table below lists all GNSS sentences the LT-4200S GMDSS system can transmit (as a talker):

GNSS Talker Sentences							
Sentence	Function	Description Transmission Da					
Formatter			Interval	Latency			
DTM	GNSS	Datum reference	1 s	< 1 s			
GBS	GNSS	GNSS satellite fault detection	1 s	< 1 s			
GGA	GNSS	Global positioning system (GPS) fix data	1 s	< 1 s			
GLL	GNSS	Geographic position – latitude / longitude	1 s	< 1 s			
GNS	GNSS	GNSS fix data	1 s	< 1 s			
GRS	GNSS	GNSS range residuals	1 s	< 1 s			
GSA	GNSS	GNSS DOP and active satellites	1 s	< 1 s			
GST	GNSS	GNSS pseudorange noise statistics	1 s	< 1 s			
GSV	GNSS	GNSS satellites in view	1 s	< 1 s			
RMC	GNSS	Recommended minimum specific GNSS data	1 s	< 1 s			
VTG	GNSS	Course over ground and ground speed	1 s	< 1 s			
ZDA	GNSS	Time and date	1 s	< 1 s			

Table 61: GNSS Talker Sentences

GNSS Listener sentences overview

No listener sentences available for GNSS.

GNSS Talker sentences

\$--DTM, ccc, a, x.x, a, x.x, a, x.x, ccc*hh<CR><LF>

\$--GGA, hhmmss.ss,llll.ll,a,yyyyy.yy,a,x,xx,x.x,X,M,x.x,M,x.x,M,x.x,xxx*hh<CR><LF>

NOTE: The "Age of differential GPS data" field (no. 13) is always null.

\$--GLL,llll.ll,a,yyyyy.yy,a,hhmmss.ss,A,a*hh<CR><LF>

\$--GNS, hhmmss.ss,llll.ll,a,yyyyy.yy,a,c--c,xx,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,a*hh<CR><LF>

\$--RMC, hhmmss.ss, A, llll.ll, a, yyyyy.yy, a, x.x, x.x, xxxxxx, x.x, a, a, a*hh<CR><LF>

NOTE: The "Magnetic variation" fields (no. 10 and 11) are always null.

\$--VTG,x.x,T,x.x,M,x.x,N,x.x,K,a*hh<CR><LF>

NOTE: The "Course over ground, degrees magnetic" field (no. 3) is always null.

\$--ZDA, hhmmss.ss, xx, xx, xxx, xx, xx*hh<CR><LF>

GNSS Listener sentences

No listener sentences available for GNSS.

App. E - BAM sentences

This appendix provides detailed information about the BAM sentences supported by the LT-4200S GMDSS system. For further details see *BAM sentences* on page 178 and web server configuration *GNSS, BAM and MSI* on page 223.

BAM Talker identification mnemonics

The LT-4200S GMDSS system may use the following talker identifiers:

BAM Talker Identification Mnemonics					
Talker Device Identifier Function					
Communications - satellite CS BAM					
Table 62: BAM talker identification mnemonics					

BAM Talker Sentence Overview

The table below lists all BAM sentences the LT-4200S GMDSS system can transmit (as a talker):

BAM Talker Sentences							
Sentence	Function	Description Transmission Data					
Formatter			Interval	Latency			
ALC	BAM	Cyclic alert list	30 s	n/a			
ALF	BAM	Alert sentence	n/a	n/a			
ARC	BAM	Alert command refused	n/a	n/a			

Table 63: BAM talker sentences

BAM Listener sentences overview

The table below lists all sentences the LT-4200S GMDSS system can receive (as a listener):

BAM Listener Sentences						
Sentence	Function	Description	Presence			
Formatter						
ACN	BAM	Alert command	Optional			
HBT	BAM	Heartbeat supervision sentences	Optional			

Table 64: BAM listener sentences

BAM talker sentences

\$--ALF,x,x,x,hhmmss.ss,a,a,a,aaaa,x.x,x.x,x.x,x,c---c*hh<CR><LF>

NOTE: If the UTC time was not known when the alert changed state, the "Time of last change" field (no. 4) is null.

\$--ARC, hhmmss.ss, aaa, x.x, x.x, c*hh<CR><LF>

NOTE: If the UTC time was not known when the alert changed state, the "Time" field (no. 1) is null.

BAM listener sentences

\$--ACN, hhmmss.ss, aaa, x.x, x.x, c, a*hh<CR><LF>

NOTE:

The "Time" field (no. 1) is ignored and optional.

\$--HBT, x.x, A, x*hh<CR><LF>

APP. F - MSI sentences

This appendix provides detailed information about the MSI sentences supported by the LT-4200S GMDSS system. For further details see *MSI sentences* on page 179 and web server configuration *GNSS, BAM and MSI* on page 223.

MSI talker identification mnemonics

The LT-4200S GMDSS system may use the following talker identifiers:

MSI Talker Identification Mnemonics						
Talker Device Identifier Function						
Communications - satellite CS MSI						
Table CE: MCI tallion identification measured						

Table 65: MSI talker identification mnemonics

MSI talker sentence overview

The table below lists all MSI sentences the LT-4200S GMDSS system can transmit (as a talker):

MSI Sentences							
Sentence	Function	Description	Transmission	Data			
Formatter			Interval	Latency			
SM1	MSI	SafetyNET message, all ships / NAVAREA	n/a	< 1 s			
SM2	MSI	SafetyNET message, coastal warning area	n/a	< 1 s			
SM3	MSI	SafetyNET message, circular area address	n/a	< 1 s			
SM4	MSI	SafetyNET message, rectangular area address	n/a	< 1 s			
SMB	MSI	SafetyNET message body	n/a	< 1 s			
SMV	MSI	SafetyNET message, vessel in distress	n/a	< 1 s			
		information					

Table 66: MSI sentences

MSI listener sentences overview

No listener sentences available for MSI.

MSI talker sentences

\$--SM1, A, x. x, xxxxxx, xxx, x, x, xx, xx, xxx, xx, xx, xx, xx, xx, xx, xx* hh

\$--SM4,A,x.x,xxxxxx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,1111.11,a,yyyyy.yy,a,xx,xx*hh

\$--SMB, xxx, xxx, x, x.x, c--c*hh

\$--SMV,x,x,x,x,x,x,xx,xx,xx,c--c,llll.ll,a,yyyyy.yy,a,xxxx,xx,xx,xx,a*hh

MSI listener sentences

No listener sentences available for MSI.

App. G - GNSS Receiver Integrity States (Automatic GNSS)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system has a built-in GNSS receiver located in the LT-4230 Antenna Unit. The GNSS receiver is used under normal conditions for providing the LT-4200S GMDSS system with time, data, and position information to all required functions in the system. The LT-4200S GMDSS system can be configured to the positions settings modes: 1) Automatic GNSS (default) or 2) Manual Input. Position Settings is located in the GMDSS submenu (MENU -> GMDSS -> Position Settings) described and illustrated in *Position Settings* on page 119. Position Status is located in the System submenu (MENU -> System) described and illustrated in *System* starting on page 164.

Table 67 illustrates the GNSS receiver integrity states in Automatic GNSS position mode. The color marking has the following meaning:

- Colored Yellow -> low integrity
- Colored Orange -> Invalid

GNSS Receiver Integrity States (Automatic GNSS)							
State	UTC	POSN	POSN (age)	Horizontal Accuracy	COG [°]	SOG [kts]	Comments
System has just booted and there is not yet a fix	Acquiring	Acquiring	-	-	-	-	System booting up
System has just booted and only time is known	Time	Acquiring	-	-	-	-	System booting up
Horizontal accuracy > 50 m (SOG = 0 kts)	Time	Lat/Long	Up to date	> 50 m	XXX.X	XX.X	System booting up
Horizontal accuracy < 50 m (SOG = 0 kts)	Time	Lat/Long	Up to date	< 50 m	XXX.X	XX.X	Normal GNSS receiver state.
SOG > 1 m/s (~ 2 kts)	Time	Lat/Long	Up to date	< 50 m	XXX.X	XX.X	Normal GNSS receiver state.
GNSS fix completely lost (last known position has age > 0 min)	Time (old)	Lat/Long	> 0 min	-	-	-	No fix on GNSS receiver (time and position).
GNSS fix completely lost (last known position has age 23 hours 59 min)	Time (old)	Lat/Long	≤ 23 hours 59 min	-	-	-	No fix on GNSS receiver (time and position).
GNSS fix completely lost (last known position has age >= 24 hours)	Time (old)	Lat/Long Acquiring	>= 24 hours	-	-	-	No fix on GNSS receiver (time and position).

Table 67: GNSS Receiver Integrity States (Automatic GNSS)

Table 67 is illustrating the GNSS receiver integrity states in Automatic GNSS position mode. The following pages will illustrate all relevant states.

System has just booted and there is not yet a fix

UTC: Acquiring POSN: Acquiring	.atl
GNSS Status	
Fix Туре	-
Latitude	-
Longitude	
Time of Position	- '
COG	-

Figure 347: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

UTC: Acquiring POSN: Acquiring	ati.
GNSS Status	
Time of Position	-
COG	-
SOG	
Accuracy	-
Satellites In Use	-

Figure 348: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

System has just booted and only time is known

UTC: 2020-11-24 19 49 POSN: Acquiring	at
GNSS Status	
Fix Туре	-
Latitude	-
Longitude	-
Time of Position	-
COG	-



UTC: 2020-11-24 19:49 POSN: Acquiring	ati
GNSS Status	
Time of Position	-
COG	-
SOG	
Accuracy	-
Satellites In Use	-

Figure 350: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

Horizontal accuracy > 50 m (SOG = 0 kts)

UTC: 2020-11-24 19:44 POSN: <mark>55*49.151N 012*29.291E</mark>	.all
GN	SS Status
Fix Type	3D + DGNSS
Latitude	55°49.151N
Longitude	012°29.291E
Time of Position	2020-11-24 19:44
COG	<mark>153.6°</mark>

Figure 351: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

UTC: 2020-11-24 19 44 POSN: 55*49.151N 012*29.291E	al.
GNSS S	tatus
Time of Position	2020-11-24 19:44
COG	153.6°
SOG	0.0 knots
Accuracy	< 100.0 m
Satellites In Use	21

Figure 352: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

Horizontal accuracy < 50 m (SOG = 0 kts)

UTC: 2020-11-24 19:53 POSN: 55*49.152N 012*29.2	291E
	GNSS Status
Fix Type	3D + DGNSS
Latitude	55°49.152N
Longitude	012°29.291E
Time of Position	2020-11-24 19:53
COG	<mark>153.6°</mark>



UTC: 2020-11-24 19 53 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29	.291E	ati
	GNSS Status	
Time of Position	2020-11	-24 19:53
COG		153.6°
SOG		0.0 knots
Accuracy		< 0.8 m
Satellites In Use		20

Figure 354: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

<u>SOG > 1 m/s (~ 2 kts)</u>

UTC: 2020-11-24 19:56 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29	0.290E	.atl
	GNSS Status	
Fix Type	3C	+ DGNSS
Latitude	55	5°49.152N
Longitude	013	2°29.290E
Time of Position	2020-11	-24 19:56
COG		153.6°

Figure 355: GNSS Receiver	Integrity State
---------------------------	-----------------

UTC: 2020-11-24 19:56 POSN: 55°49.152N 012°29.290E	.atl
GNSS	Status
Time of Position	2020-11-24 19:56
COG	153.6°
SOG	2.0 knots
Accuracy	< 0.8 m
Satellites In Use	20

Figure 356: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

GNSS fix completely lost (last known position has age 10 min)

GNSS Position (-00:10) POSN: <mark>55*49.151N 012*29.290</mark>	e <mark>1</mark>	ati.
GN	ISS Status	
Fix Type		-
Latitude	55	5°49.151N
Longitude	01:	2°29.290E
Time of Position	2020-11	-24 20:00
COG		-



GNSS Position (-00:10) POSN: <mark>55*49.151N 012*29.290E</mark>	• <u>।</u>	atl
GNS	S Status	
Time of Position	2020-11	-24 20:00
COG		-
SOG		
Accuracy		
Satellites In Use		•

Figure 358: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

GNSS Position (-23: POSN: <mark>55"49.151N_012"29</mark>	59) 1 .290E	ati
	GNSS Status	
Fix Type		-
Latitude	5	5°49.151N
Longitude	01	2°29.290E
Time of Position	2020-1	1-24 20:00
COG		-

GNSS fix completely lost (last known position has age 23 hours 59 min)

Figure 359: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

GNSS Position (-23:59) POSN: <mark>55*49.151N 012*29.290</mark>	e <mark>1</mark>	.atl
GN	SS Status	
Time of Position	2020-11	-24 20:00
COG		
SOG		· ·
Accuracy		
Satellites In Use		-

Figure 360: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

GNSS fix completely lost (last known position has age >= 24 hours)



Figure 361: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

UTC: 2020-11-25 20:00 POSN: Acquiring	• <mark>!</mark>	at l
	GNSS Status	
Time of Position	2020-11	-24 20:00
COG		
SOG		
Accuracy		
Satellites In Use		-

Figure 362: GNSS Receiver Integrity State

App. H - Specifications

LT-4200S GMDSS Satellite Communications System	n
Certification & standards	Maritime CE, FCC, ISED, RCM, RED, MED (Wheelmark),
	RoHS 2, Iridium®
Vibration, operational	IEC 60945
Vibration, shock	Half sine 20 g/11 ms
Compass Safe Distance, std.	0.3 - 1.4 m (1.0 – 4.6 ft)
Compass Safe Distance, steer.	0.3 - 0.9 m (1.0 - 3.0 ft)
BAM EUT function types	Р
Power consumption: Transmit, max	164 W
Power consumption: Receive	34 W
LT-4210S Control Unit	
Weight	0.67 kg (1.48 lbs)
Dimensions	224.0 x 120.0 x 70.0 mm (8.82 x 4.72 x 2.76 in)
Temperature, operational	-15°C to +55°C (+5°F to +131°F)
IP rating, dust and water	IP32
Interfaces	Ethernet, auxiliary, DC input, chassis ground
	Antenna Unit (N conn.), handset, SIM card
Input power	24 VDC (8 A)
Compass Safe Distance, std.	0.60 m (2.0 ft)
Compass Safe Distance, steer.	0.40 m (1.3 ft)
LT-3120 Handset	
Weight	0.30 kg (0.66 lbs)
Dimensions	52.8 x 208.8 x 38.2 mm (2.08 x 8.22 x 1.50 in)
Temperature, operational	-15°C to +55°C (+5°F to +131°F)
IP rating, dust and water	IP32
Compass Safe Distance, std.	0.60 m (2.0 ft)
Compass Safe Distance, steer.	0.35 m (1.1 ft)
LT-3121 Cradle	
Weight	0.07 kg (0.15 lbs)
Dimensions	106.9 x 57.4 x 29.3 mm (4.21 x 2.26 x 1.15 in)
Compass Safe Distance, std.	1.40 m (4.6 ft)
Compass Safe Distance, steer.	0.90 m (3.0 ft)
LT-4230 Antenna Unit	
Weight (without mount)	3.70 kg (8.16 lbs)
Dimensions	238.7 x Ø 224.6 mm (9.40 x Ø 8.84 in)
Temperature, operational (24 VDC input power)	-40°C to +55°C (-40°F to +131°F)
IP rating, dust and water	IP67
Interfaces	Control Unit (N conn.)
Antenna communication cable	Coaxial cable, up to 150 m (492 ft)

Compass Safe Distance, std. Compass Safe Distance, steer. 0.30 m (1.0 ft)

0.30 m (1.0 ft)

App. H - Specifications (continued)

LT-3140S Interface Unit

Weight Dimensions Temperature, operational IP rating, dust and water Interfaces

Input power Power consumption: operating mode, max Compass Safe Distance, std. Compass Safe Distance, steer.

LT-3150S Alarm Panel

Weight / Weight (incl. 25m cable) Dimensions Temperature, operational IP rating, dust and water Interfaces Compass Safe Distance, std. Compass Safe Distance, steer.

LT-3160S Printer Adapter

Weight / Weight (incl. 25m cable) Dimensions Temperature, operational IP rating, dust and water Interfaces

Compass Safe Distance, std. Compass Safe Distance, Steer.

Warranty Maintenance 0.71 kg (1.57 lbs) 227.0 x 186.0 x 40.0 mm (8.94 x 7.32 x 1.57 in) -15°C to +55°C (+5°F to +131°F) IP20 4 x Ethernet, 2 x RS-422, 4 x GPIO, 4 x CAN DC input, chassis ground 24 VDC (0.4 A) 10.0 W 0,30 m (1.0 ft) 0,30 m (1.0 ft)

0.07 kg (0.15 lbs) / 1.29 (2.84 lbs) 52.0 x 82.0 x 26.0 mm (2.05 x 3.23 x 1.02 in) -15°C to +55°C (+5°F to +131°F) IP30 1 x CAN 0,70 m (2,3 ft) 0,50 m (1,6 ft)

0.03 kg (0.07 lbs) / 1.25 kg (2.76 lbs) 62.1 x 68.1 x 19.4 mm (2.44 x 2.68 x 0.76 in) -15°C to +55°C (+5°F to +131°F) IP40 1 x CAN

0,70 m (2,3 ft) 0,50 m (1,6 ft)

2 year None

App. I - Outline Drawing: LT-4210S Control Unit



Figure 363: Outline Drawing: LT-4210S Control Unit





Figure 364: Outline Drawing: Bracket Mount, Control Unit

App. K - Outline Drawing: Flush Mount, Control Unit



Figure 365: Outline Drawing: Flush Mount, Control Unit

App. L - Outline Drawing: LT-4230 Antenna Unit



Figure 366: Outline Drawing: LT-4230 Antenna Unit

App. M - Outline Drawing: LT-3140S Interface Unit





Figure 367: Outline Drawing: LT-3140S Interface Unit

App. N - Outline Drawing: LT-3150S Alarm Panel



Figure 368: Outline Drawing: LT-3150S Alarm Panel

App. O - Outline Drawing: LT-3160S Printer Adapter







Figure 369: Outline Drawing: LT-3160S Printer Adapter

App. P -- Outline Drawing: Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, 53.0mm, A4 Stainless), Antenna Unit

NOTE: The Pole Mount (2.0" pipe, 53.0mm), Antenna Unit interfaces to a pipe of maximum 2.0" (53.0 mm), measured outer diameter. The total weight of the Pole Mount is 1701 g (3.75 lbs).



Figure 370: Outline Drawing: Pole Mount (2.0" pipe), Antenna Unit





Figure 371: Outline Drawing: LT-3120 Handset





Figure 372: Outline Drawing: LT-3121 Cradle

App. S - Conformity

Radio Equipment Directive (RED) / CE

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is CE certified as stated in the EU Declaration of Conformity (DoC).

The EU DoC for the LT-4200S GMDSS system can be downloaded from the Lars Thrane A/S website, partner area (password required). Please contact Lars Thrane A/S for an electronic copy of the LT-4200S GMDSS system EU DoC.

The LT-4200S GMDSS system complies with the specifications of:

RED directive 2014/53/EU concerning Radio Equipment

Wheelmark (MED)

The LT-4200S GMDSS system is Wheelmark certified as started in the MED Declaration of Conformity (DoC).

The MED DoC for the LT-4200S GMDSS system can be downloaded from the Lars Thrane A/S website, partner area (password required). Please contact Lars Thrane A/S for an electronic copy of the LT-4200S GMDSS system MED DoC. A printed hard copy of the MED DoC for the LT-4200S GMDSS system is delivered with the LT-4200S GMDSS system (incl. printed copies of MED Module B and D).

The LT-4200S GMDSS system complies with the specifications of:

MED directive 2014/90/EU concerning Marine Equipment Module B and Module D (Approval og Quality System)

Iridium GMDSS

The LT-4200S GMDSS system has obtained an Iridium GMDSS type approval.

Lars Thrane A/S

Skovlytoften 33

2840 Holte

Denmark

www.thrane.eu